بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم

The new

OK. 2024

من أجلـــــــكم تعلـــمنا ولكم ما تعلــــــمنا

First Year

الصف الاول الثانوي

الاسم/ ....

العنوان/..

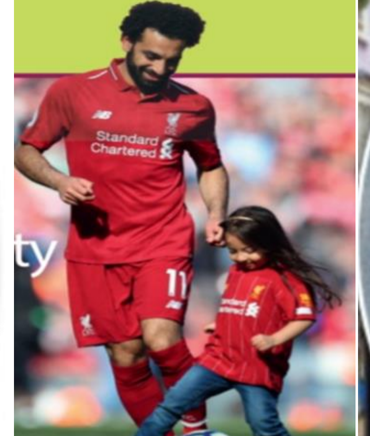
الامنية/..

كيفية التحقيق/ ....

فى حالة فقدان الكتيب برجاء الاتصال بـ/...............................

رقم الطالب







قاموس لاهم كلمات ترجمة

Medicine طب			
medicine	طب / دواء	addiction	إدمان
drugs	عقاقير	addict	يدمن
Plastic surgery	جراحة تجميل	recuperation	فترة نقاهة
liver	كبد	intensive care	عناية مركزة
respiratory system	جهاز تنفسي	ventilator	جهاز تنفس صناعي
lungs	رئتين	kidneys	كليتين
experiments	تجارب معملية	immune system	جهاز المناعة
backbone	عمود فقرى	sanitation	نظافة عامة
vessels	اوعية	spleen	طحال
valves	صمامات	laboratory	معمل
artery	شريان	analysis	تحليل
coma	غيبوبة	diagnosis	تشخيص للمرض
vomiting	قئ	tablets	أقراص
vaccines	أمصال	syrup	شراب
antivenom	مصل / ترياق	ointment	مرهم
transfusion	عملية نقل دم	pregnancy	حمل
transplant	عملية زرع عضو	pregnant	حامل
cells	خلايا	inflammation	التهاب
incurable	لا علاج له	muscles	عضلات
Economy أقتصاد			
fever	حمى	indigestion	عسر الهضم
economy	اقتصاد	discount	تخفيض
economics	علم الاقتصاد	hard currency	عملة صعبة
economic	اقتصادى	renaissance	نهضة
commerce	تجارة	monopoly	احتكار
goods	بضائع	items	سلع
shares	اسهم	national income	الدخل القومى
stock market	بورصة	nationalization	تأميم
investment	إستثمار	taxes	ضرائب
investor	مستثمر	statistics	إحصائيات
trade	تجارة / يتاجر	canned food	طعام معلب
second hand	مستعمل	junk food	طعام سريع
handmade	صناعة يدوية	balances	موازنات
manufacture	يصنع	accounts	حسابات
manufacturer	مصنع	accountant	محاسب
brand	ماركة	prices	أسعار
sales	مبيعات / تخفيضات	hypermarket	سوبرماركت شامل
For sale	للبيع	expenses	نفقات

reduction	تخفيض	revenues	عوائد
decline	يقل / ينحدر	adjustment	تسوية
profits	أرباح	budget	ميزانية
finance	مال	corporation	شركة
customers	زبائن	capital	رأس المال
clients	عملاء	dealers	وكلاء
consumption	إستهلاك	purchase	يشترى
consume	يستهلك	purchaser	مشترى
rationalization	ترشيد	long-term	طويل الاجل
recycling	إعادة تصنيع	short-term	قصير الاجل
marketing	تسويق	patent	براءة اختراع
bankrupt	مفلس	decline	ينحدر / يقل
Education التعليم		**Politics السياسة**	
educational	تعليمى	policy	سياسة
boarding school	مدرسة داخلية	politics	علم السياسة
reforms	اصلاحات	politician	سياسى
evaluation	تقويم	party	حزب
concentration	تركيز	elections	انتخابات
strategy	خطة	parliament	برلمان
staff	هيئة عاملين	constitution	دستور
principles	مبادىء	democracy	ديموقراطية
values	قيم	democratic	ديموقراطى
manners	سلوكيات	belonging	انتماء
corner stone	حجر الزاوية	negotiations	مفاوضات
faithfulness	إخلاص	domination	هيمنة / سيطرة
brain drain	هجرة العقول العلمية	rights	حقوق
sufficiency	إكتفاء	activist	ناشط
creative	مبدع	equality	مساواة
cultural	ثقافى	justice	عدالة
aware	واع	freedom	حرية
verbal	لفظى	military	حربى / عسكرى
non-verbal	غير لفظى	armed forces	قوات مسلحة
gestures	إيماءات/ ايحاءات	public opinion	الراى العام
nutrition	تغذية	martyr	شهيد
UNESCO	منظمة اليونسكو	regime	نظام حكم
encyclopedia	موسوعة	uprising	انتفاضة
deterioration	تخلف / تدهور	conspiracy	مؤامرة
procedures	إجراءات	looting	اعمال سلب ونهب
heritage	تراث	strike	اضراب
bullying	بلطجة	diplomacy	دبلوماسية
innovation	ابتكار	subjects	رعايا
talented	موهوب	national unity	وحدة وطنية

Sport رياضة		Psychology علم نفس	
professional	محترف	psychologist	عالم نفسى
amateur	هاوى	psychiatrist	طبيب نفسى
individual	فردى	complicated	معقد
World cup	كأس العالم	therapist	معالج
athletics	العاب قوى	therapy	علاج
athletes	رياضيين	deviation	إنحراف
tournament	دورة	suicide	إنتحار
behaviour	سلوك	Physically ill	مريض بدنيا
fair play	اللعب النظيف	mentally ill	مريض عقلياً
finals	نهائيات	vices	رذائل
strip of	يجرد من	theory	نظرية
take drugs	تعاطى المنشطات	adolescence	فترة المراهقة
audience	جمهور	teenager	مراهق
defeat	هزيمة / يهزم	company	رفقة / صحبة
victory	نصر	deeds	أعمال / أفعال
enrich	تثرى(تغذى)	inhibitions	وساوس
solo	فردى / منفرد	dichotomy	إنفصام
competition	منافسة	narcotics	مخدرات
Physical fitness	لياقة بدنية	stubborn	عنيد
Youth hostels	بيوت الشباب	mislead	يضلل
muscles	عضلات	addict	مدمن
Sciences علوم		**Self-** نفس/ ذات	
sociology	علم الإجتماع	self-made	عصامى (بنى نفسة بنفسة)
biology	علم الأحياء	self-employed	يعمل لحساب نفسة
archaeology	علم الآثار	self-respect	احترام النفس
botany	علم النبات	self-esteem	الاعتزاز بالنفس
anthropology	علم دراسة الانسان	self-centred	متمركز حول ذاته
psychology	علم النفس	self-confident	الثقة بالنفس
physiology	علم الفلسفة	self-control	التحكم بالنفس
anatomy	علم التشريح	self-defence	الدفاع عن النفس
ecology	علم البيئة	selfish	انانى
zoology	علم الحيوان	self-sufficient	مكتفى ذاتياً
astrology	علم التنجيم	self-reliant	معتمد على نفسة
astronomy	علم الفلك	self- educated	علم نفسة بنفسة
Arts فنون		**Government** حكومة	
fine arts	فنون جميلة	president	رئيس
abstract art	فن تجريدى	Vice president	نائب الرئيس
etiquette	فن الاتيكيت	Prime minister	رئيس الوزراء
graphics	فن الجرافيك	minister	وزير
embroidery	فن التطريز	governorate	محافظ
calligraphy	فن الخط	mayor	عمده

sculpture	فن النحت	alderman	شيخ بلد
ballet	فن الباليه	adviser	مستشار
Peace & War	سلام/حرب	**Literature**	أدب
treaty	معاهدة	incidents	أحداث
victims	ضحايا	inspiration	إلهام
truce	هدنة	essay	مقالة
Peace maker	صانع سلام	epic	ملحمة
prosperity	إزدهار	fables	قصص خرافية
luxury	رفاهية	imagination	خيال
welfare	رخاء	bestseller	الاكثر مبيعاً
progress	تقدم	extract	يقتطف
refugees	لاجئين	improvisation	إرتجال
subjects	رعايا	personify	يجسد
destructive weapons	أسلحة مدمرة	coherence	ترابط
Fatal/lethal	فتاك / قاتل	spiritual strength	قوة روحية
resistance	مقاومة	taboo	محرم / محارم
sabotage	يفسد	fiction	خيال
captives	أسرى	stimulus	مثير / محرك
flourish	يزدهر	subjective	ذاتى
nations	أمم	objective	موضوعى
Spy/pies	جاسوس	critical thinking	تفكير نقدى
secret agent	عميل سرى	feedback	تغذية راجعة
treason	خيانة عظمى	Public opinion	الراى العام
hang	يشنق	reference	مرجع
rebellion\ rebel	تمرد /يتمرد	summary	خلاصة
nerds	ثوار	moral	مغزى
bombs	قنابل	e-books	كتب الكترونية
prevail	يسود	manuscripts	مخطوطات
independence	إستقلال	papyrus	ورق بردى
assassination	إغتيال	masterpieces	روائع
Tourism	سياحة	**Nature**	طبيعة
tourism	سياحة	nature	طبيعة
tourist	سائح	natural	طبيعى
destination	مقصد	anger of nature	غضب الطبيعة
resort	مصيف /منتجع	disaster	كارثة
recreation	ترفيه	disastrous	مدمر
Hard currency	عملة صعبة	catastrophe	كارثة
earner	مصدر دخل	earthquake	زلزال
attraction	جذب	volcano	بركان
attractive	جذاب	tornado	إعصار
travel agency	وكالة سفريات	hurricane	إعصار
hospitality	كرم الضيافة	glacier	نهر جليدى
aboriginals	السكان الاصليين	landslide	إنزلاق التربة

hostility	عداء	photosynthesis	عملية البناء الضوئى
density	كثافة	observatory	مرصد
safety	أمان	temperate	معتدل
security	أمن	tropical	إستوائى
cultures	ثقافات	humidity	رطوبة
surplus	الفائض	rainbow	قوس قزح
pharaohs	فراعنة	moisture	رطوبة
homesickness	حنين للوطن	tame	اليف
immigration	هجرة	wild	برى
domestic tourism	سياحة داخلية	extinction	إنقراض
ecotourism	سياحة عدم الاضرار بالبيئة	extinct	منقرض
vacations	عطلات/ اجازات	floods	فياضانات
fine	غرامة/ بديع	waterfalls	شلالات
Space	فضاء	**Internet**	إنترنت
space tourism	سياحة الفضاء	website	موقع
space shuttle	مكوك فضاء	network	شبكى
planets	كواكب	hacker	قرصان نت
asteroids	كويكبات	fraud	نصب الكترونى
space agency	وكالة فضاء	communication	تواصل
Mars	كوكب المريخ	privacy	خصوصية
Mercury	كوكب عطارد	browse	يتصفح
Venus	كوكب الزهرة	administrator(admin.)	منظم
Jupiter	كوكب المشترى	fake	مزيف
weightless	بلا وزن	identity (ID)	هوية
gravity	جاذبية	posts	ملصقات
zero gravity	إنعدام الجاذبية	Personal computer	كمبيوتر شخصى
aliens	مخلوقات غريبة	wireless	هوائى/ بلا أسلاك
missiles	صواريخ	logo	شعار
orbits	مدارات	misuse	إساءة استخدام
Cinema	سينما	**fashion**	موضة
stage	خشبة المسرح	fashion designer	مصمم أزياء
actor	ممثل	fashion show	عرض ازياء
actress	ممثلة	mantles	عباءات
scenario	سيناريو/ حوار	tastes	أذواق
director	مخرج	naked	عارى
producer	منتج	semi-naked	شبه عارى
location	موقع تصوير	cope with	يجارى / يساير
movies	أفلام	models	عارضات أزياء
serials	مسلسلات	variety	منوعات
award	جائزة / يمنح جائزة	accessories	إكسيسوار/ كماليات
publicity	شهرة / ذيوع	cosmetics	ادوات تجميل
general Words كلمات عامة			
withstand	يتحمل	insulation	عزل (للاشياء)

testify	يشهد	jealousy	غيرة
public transport	مواصلات عامة	appreciation	تقدير
mummification	تحنيط	receipt	إيصال
mummify	يحنط	raping	إغتصاب
mummy	مومياء	circumstances	ظروف
curse	لعنة	bite	يراهن/ يعض
seminar	ندوة	machinery	ميكنة
reckless	غير مبال	harassment	تحرش
recycling	إعادة تصنيع/ تدوير	succeed	يتبع/ ينجح
wastefulness	تبذير	successor	تابع / خليفة
wasteful	مبذر	voluntary	تطوعى/ طوعاً
extravagancy	إسراف	volunteer	متطوع
extravagant	مسرف	guerilla war	حرب عصابات
propaganda	دعاية	bankruptcy	إفلاس
neutrality	حيادية	bankrupt=penniless	مفلس
neutral	محايد	concepts	مفاهيم
communism	شيوعية	erratic= unstable	غير مستقر
communist	شيوعى	diplomacy	دبلوماسية
hypocrisy	نفاق	parallel to	موازى لــ
hypocrite	منافق	dignity	عزة / كرامة
Zionism	صهيونية	cloning	إستنساخ
flyovers	كبارى علوية	accumulation	تراكم / تكدس
vegetarian	إنسان نباتى	obstacles	عوائق
liberty	حرية	claims	إدعاءات/ فروض
mixed-blessing	نعمة ونقمة	merely	مجرد
deeds	اعمال	elite	صفوة/ نخبة
pessimism	تشاؤم	tendency	إتجاه / ميل

Unit 1

Getting away الذهاب بعيدا

ecotourism	سياحه بيئيه	destination	مقصد-اتجاه	biologist	عالم بيولوجي
collaboration	تعاون	including	متضمنا	tourist	سائح
endanger	يعرض للخطر	cheap	رخيص	volunteer	متطوع
endangered	معرض للخطر	gardening	زراعه الحدائق	rebuild	يعيد بناء
isolated	معزول	pink	وردي	path	ممر
insulated	مغطي بعازل	sand	رمال	top	قمه
local	محلي	friendly	ودود	fortunately	لحسن الحظ
design	يصمم	a tradition	تقليد	unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
environment	بيئه	traditional	تقليدي	warm	دافئ
environmental	بيئي	village	قريه	souvenir	هديه تذكاريه
environmentally	بيئيا	summarise	يلخص	drop	يسقط
educate	يعلم	text	نص	prepare	يعد
learn	يتعلم	everywhere	في كل مكان	brilliant	لامع
show	يوضح	provide	يزود-يوفر	dive	يغوص
conservation	محافظه	harm	يؤذي	teenage	مراهق
along	بطول	tourist industry	صناعه السياحه	a teenager	مراهق
coast	ساحل	eco-hotel	فندق في بيئه نظيفه	resort	منتجع
shore	شاطئ	respect	يحترم – احترام	relaxed	مسترخي
avoid	يتجنب	anywhere	اي مكان	relaxing	مريح
tourist	سائح	lean out of	يطل من	underwater	تحت الماء
coral reefs	شعاب مرجانيه	spicy	حريف-لاذع-حراق	ancient	قديم
safe	آمن- خزنه	swell up	ينتفخ	temple	معبد
animal	حيوان	trek	يذهب في رحله شاقه	history	تاريخ
plant	نبات	conservationist	محافظ	actually	حقا
exist	يتواجد	orang-utan	انسان الغاب- حيوان	fascinating	مبهر
island	جزيره	spider	عنكبوت	glad	سعيد
unique	فريد	bite	يعض	really	حقا
giant	عملاق	rainforest	غابه مطيره	bored	مالل
lemur	هوبر"نوع من القرود"	sick	مريض	stuck	محشور
turtle	سلحفاه	balcony	بلكونه	awful	مخيف
sustainable	مستمر	fall	يسقط	grand parents	اجداد
tiny	ضئيل-صغير	old	قديم	clog	سداده- يسد
granddad	جد	peaceful	سلمي	existence	وجود
vegetables	خضراوات	quite	هادئ	pollution	تلوث
active	نشط	photograph	صوره	pollute	يلوث
ancient	قديم	castle	قلعه	polluted	ملوث
beautiful	جميل	hatred	كراهيه	pollutants	مواد ملوثه
modern	حديث	exotic	غريب- دخيل	boring	ممل
new	جديد	loads	احمال- اعباء	busy	مشغول
noisy	كثير الضوضاء	Portugal	البرتغال	calm	هادئ
Indonesia	اندونيسيا	Madagascar	مدغشقر	crowded	مزدحم
Ecuador	الاكوادور	lettuce	خس	manhood	الرجولة

bite	يعض	blow	تهب	carnival	احتفال
blog	مدونة	board	متن السفينة	cruise ship	باخره سياحيه
dragon	تنين	eco-hotel	فندق صديق للبيئة	exist	يتواجد
fascinating	جميل	otherwise	وإلا	paradise	جنه
plaza	مجمع تجاري	resident	ساكن	sail	يبحر - شراع
stuck	عالق	sunbathe	يأخذ حمام شمس	victim	ضحيه
mosquito	ناموسه	Thai	تايلندي		

Definitions

ecotourism	السياحه البيئيه	a holiday which respects and conserves the environment.
endanger	يعرض للخطر	to put someone or something in a dangerous situation
existence	وجود	the state of existing
impact	تأثير	the effect or influence that an event or situation has no someone…
limited	محدود	not very great, number, ability…..etc
environment	البيئة	the air, water and land in which people live.
materials	مواد	a substance that is used to make something or that has a particular quality.
unique	فريد - متميز	unusually good and special and not like any other
sustainable	مستدام-مصون	can continue or last for a long time
lean	يميل	to bend or move from a vertical position
spicy	لاذع	having a strong taste
swell up	يتورم-ينتفخ	to become bigger or rounder
trek	يقوم برحله شاقه	to make a long or difficult journey on foot
crowded	مزدحم	having many people
exotic	غريب	unusual and exciting because it is from or in another country.
isolated	معزوله	far away from any others
peaceful	هادئ	not involving a war
relaxing	مريح	be less anxious
ancient	قديم	thousands of years ago in the past
ecosystem	النظام البيئي	all the animals and plants in an area and the way they depend on each other.
volunteer	متطوع	Someone who does a job willing without being paid
conservatism	حمايه للبيئة	the protection of natural things such animals, plants, forests, etc to prevent them from being spoiled or destroyed.
conservationist	ناشط بيئي	a person whose job is to help protect natural things such as wild animals.
exciting	شيق - مثير	something that makes you feel excited.
modern	حديث- معاصر	something which is new and connected to the present.
orangutan	إنسان الغابة	a large ape with long arms and long orange brown hair.

Derivatives

bore	يسبب ملل	bored	مالل	boring	ممل
amaze	يدهش	amazed	مندهش	amazing	مدهش
limit	يقلل /حد	limited	محدود	un limited/limitless	لاحد له
affect	يؤثر	effective	مؤثر	effectively	بشكل فعال
influence	يؤثر/تأثير	influential	مؤثر	influenced	متأثر
save	يوفر-ينقذ	safe	امن	safety	أمان

Synonyms

trek	رحلة طويله سيرا	hike
spicy	حريق- متبل بالبهارات	hot
material	قماش	cloth- fabric
isolated	بعيد - منعزل	remote – faraway
giant	عملاق	very big- gigantic
exotic	مدهش	amazing
impact on	يؤثر – تأثير	effect- affect
impact	ارتطام - اصطدام	crash

Antonyms

sustainable	دائم	unsustainable	غير دائم
relaxing	مريح	stressful	ضاغط
isolated	منعزل	sociable	اجتماعي
quiet	هادئ	noisy	ضوضائي
boring	ممل	interesting	شيق
beautiful	جميل	ugly	قبيح
active	نشط	lazy	كسول
exotic	مدهش	conventional	تقليدي
exotic	اجنبي	native	مألوف
fortunately	لحسن الحظ	unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
exist	يتواجد	die out	ينقرض
remote	بعيد	near	قريب
here	هنا	there	هناك
big	كبير	small tiny	صغير /ضئيل
active	نشط	lazy	كسول
busy	مشغول	free	غير مشغول
calm	هادئ	noisy	ضوضائي
new	جديد	old	قديم
cheap	رخيص	expensive	غالي
safe	امن	hazardous	خطير

Prepositions

important for	هام ل	lean over	يطل علي
swell up	يتورم	lean out of	يطل من
impact on	تأثير علي	fill with	يملأ ب

influence on	تأثير علي	full of	ملئ ب
famous for	مشهور	trek into	يذهب في رحله شاقه ألي
expose to	يتعرض ل	busy with	مشغول ب
blow off	يهب	adapt to	يتكيف مع
feed on	يتغذي علي	part of	جزء من
take in	يمتص	take care of	يعتني ب
take turns	يتناوب الادوار	take out	يخرج
close to	قريب من	on the balcony	في البلكونه
sail along	يبحر بطول	on vocation	في اجازه
interested in	مهتم ب	on holiday	في اجازه
excited about	فرحان ب	on business	في عمل
stay in	يقيم في	on duty	في مهمه
stay with	يقيم مع	on vocation	في مهمه
benefit from	يستفيد من	learn about	يتعلم عن
good at	جيد في	on approval	تحت المشوره
good for	مفيد ل	good to	رحيم ب

راجع معاى takeعشان هناخدها بعدين بزيادة شويتين

Take place	يحدث	**take over**	يتولي مسئولية
take on	يوظف	**take in**	يمتص – يخدع – يفهم
take part	يشارك	**take apart**	يفكك
take after	يشبه	**take off**	تقلع الطائرة- يخلع ملابس

Language notes

1- Encourage /discourage

encourage + مفعول+ **to** + مصدر يشجع علي

We should encourage tourists to visit Egypt

encourage + v+ ing يشجع علي الشئ

He encourages staying on the beach.

discourage مفعول + **from**+ الشئ لا يشجع علي او يمنع من

We should discourage children from eating fast food.

2- See/ hear/ watch/ notice +object + v+ing/inf

see/ hear/ watch/ notice + مفعول **V+ing**

يري او يسمع او يشاهد او يلاحظ جزء من الحدث

We saw the sun going down

يري او يسمع او يشاهد او يلاحظ الحدث كاملا

see/ hear/ watch/ notice + مصدر

We saw the sun go down

3- Quiet/ quite/ quit

quiet هادئ

We'll have to be quiet so as not to wake the baby

quite الي حد ما

He seems quite upset about it all

quit يخرج/ يترك شئ قبل اكتماله

I quite school when I was 16.

4- Keep + object +adj/v-ing

Keeping the special coral reefs safe is a must

5- Ed/V-ing

غالبا وليس دائما الصفات التي تنتهي ب **v-ing** لوصف الاسخاص والصفات التي تنتهي **ed** لوصف الاشخاص

excited	فرحان	exciting	مثير
relaxing	مريح	relaxed	مسترخي
amazing	مدهش	amazed	مندهش
interested	مهتم	interesting	شيق
fascinated	منبهر	fascinating	مبهر
bored	شاعر بالملل	boring	ممل
frightened	خائف	frightening	مخيف

-the story was very (interested- interesting)
-Really she is (interested-interesting) in her job all the time.

6- (include- contain- consist of- enclose)

include يحتوي علي (جزء او اكثر من الكل وليس الكل)
contain يحتوي علي شئ بداخله (علي كل)
consist of يتكون من كل المكونات الاساسيه
enclose يرفق- يحيط

All students (**including**- enclosing) sarah are clever.
The flat (contains- **consists**) of 3 a bathroom and a kitchen.
The bottle(consists- **contains**) 3 litters of water.

7- stay with يقيم مع stay in- at يقيم في

-He stayed (with- in) his relatives.
-He stayed (with- in) a hotel.

7- Little

little+ اسم لا يعد قليل الكميه
little + اسم يعد صغير الحجم
1-He gave us **little** money.
2-He is a **little** boy, he is weak.

9-Coloured / colourful

coloured ملون – ذو الوان متنوعه
colourful ذاهي الالوان – مثير
1-I have no (colourful- **coloured**) photos all my photos are black and white.
2-He has (coloured- **colourful**) life. He has a happy life.
3-Little children like (coloured- **colourful**) clothes that attract others.

10-conserve

conserve = preserve يحفظ – يحمي – يرشد

conserve يحمي — conservationist شخص محافظ علي
conservation = preservation حمايه – ترشيد

-We have to (conserve- conservationist) water.

11- isolate	يعزل – يفصل	**isolation**	عزله – البعد
isolated	بعيد – شاعر بالعزله		

1-We should (isolated – **isolate**) our children from bad friends.
2-He lives in an (isolate- **isolated**) city.
3-The feeling of (isolate- **isolation**) is very difficult.
4-I can't live in an (isolation- **isolated**) place.

12-crowded with	مزدحم بـ	**over crowded with**	مكتظ
over crowdedness	الازدحام	**over crowding**	الزحام
crowd	جمع- حشد	**crowd**	يتجمع - يحتشد

1-The street is crowded (by- **with**) people.
2-The most serious problem is (crowd- **crowdedness**).
3-There is a lot of (**crowd**- crowded) in the wedding.

لاحظ التعبير الاتي:

Worries crowded in on her..لقد تزاحمت عليه الهموم

13-Lean

lean - leant	ينحني	**lean – on / against**	يتكئ علي – يعتمد علي
lean	رفيع	**leaning**	مائل
lean years	سنوات الضنك	**lean meat**	لحوم قليله الشحم
lean production	انتاج مقتصد	**lean out of**	يطل من

1-Don't (leaning – **lean**) out of the train.
2-We have visited the (lean- **leaning**) tower of Pisa.
3-She is (**lean**- fat) she is about to skinny.
4-He leans (of- **on**) his father in taking decisions.

14-Volunteer

volunteer	يتطوع	volunteer	شخص متطوع
voluntary	تطوعي	voluntarism	السياحه الخيريه
		voluntarist	سائح تطوعي

- -It's not compulsory it's (volunteer- **voluntary**)
- -He has (**volunteered** – voluntary) to help them

15-Swell

swell , swelled, swollen	يتقدم - يزداد	**swelling**	ورم
swollen	متورم - ملتهب		

لا تنسى

swell with pride يشعر بالفخر — **swell with anger** يستشيط غضبا

swell – headed = big – headed مغرور

1) -The bee stung him and his face has become (swell- swollen).
2) -The man has insulted him and he (swelled- willed) with anger.
3) -she is conceited, she is (well – swell) headed.

16-Material / spicy

spicy	حريق- حار	**spices**	توابل
spice….with	يتبل	**spice up**	تمتع
material	مادي – ملموس	**material**	مادي خاص بالمال
material	قماش	**material**	ماده خام
spice	اهتمام- اثاره		

1) -this sandwich is very (spice- spicy)
2) -His jokes (spice- spicy) up our talk.
3) -our teacher of English make us feel with (spice- spicy) in the class.
4) -Don't be (material- clothes), you always think of money.
5) -I need some (clothes- material) enough for a suit.
6) -Building (clothes- materials) have become very expensive.
7) -I have a (spicy- material) evidence that she is innocent.

17-Eco

ecotourist	سائح بيئي	**ecotourism**	سياحه بيئيه
ecology	علم البيئه	**ecologist**	عالم متخصص في البيئة
ecosystem	النظام البيئي		

18-Sustain

sustain	يحافظ علي	**sustain – expose**	يتعرض لـ
sustainable	ملائم للبيئه	**sustainable**	دائم

-We should not destroy (sustain- sustainable) forests.
-We must (sustain – sustainable) our monuments.

19-Danger

danger	خطر	**dangerous**	خطير
endanger	يعرض للخطر	**endangered**	معرض للخطر
dangerously	بشكل خطير		

-We must do something to save (danger- endangered) animals.
-It's great (danger- dangerous) to deal with electricity.
-He has (dangerous- endangered) himself to save his sister.

20-fall	يسقط	**fell**	**fallen**
feel	يشعر	**felt**	**felt**
fill	يملأ	**filled**	**filled**
fail	يرسب	**failed**	**failed**

1-you should study hard or you'll…………. your exams.

2-you must…………..the tank with water.
3-He……………happy whom he succeeded.
4-Be careful or you will ……………..off the tree.

21-present	هديه لمناسبه	**souvenirs**	هدايا تذكاريه
prize	جائزه	**reward**	مكافأه

-tourists always buy (prizes- souvenirs) before leaving the country.

22-Busy with + n   busy+v- ing

He is (busy – busy with) a customer right now.
He is (busy – busy with) studying for the exam.

23-Weather / climate

weather   الطقس حاله الجو في فتره قصيره / مكان ما
climate   المناخ حاله الجو في فتره طويلة

* What will the (weather – climate) be like tomorrow
* What was the (weather – climate) like yesterday?
* The (climate- weather) in Egypt is fine all the year around.

24-else

someone else/ everyone/ nothing else ونستخدم بعد الكلمات التي تبدأ ب some / every/ no مثل
نستخدم بعد الكلمات التي تنتهي one- thing- body

Something else- something else - everybody else

what/ who/where/what else/who else/where else ونستخدم بعد كلمات الاستفهام

25- فاعل +would + like /love/prefer+ to + مصدر /
فاعل **would +rather+**مصدر

*I'd like to have orange juice.
* I'd prefer to stay at home.
* I'd rather have coffee.

26- **Spend**

فاعل **+ spend+** وقت \مال\جهد **+(v.ing)**   يقضى/ يتبرع ب

- We will spend some time working outside.
- He spend a lot of effort (money) doing this project.

- فاعل+**Spend +**مال **+on +(v.ing/n)**

*Governments should spend more money on scientific research.

27-Expressions with the reflexive pronouns

cut yourself	اجرح نفسى
help yourself	خذ ماتريد
enjoy yourself	استمتع بوقتى
make yourself **at home**	اعتبر البيت بيتك
behave yourself	كن مؤدب

29-New meanings

isolated incident حدث فريد	**a spicy story** قصه غير لائقة	**trek** مسافه طويله
lean (adj. نحيف (غير سمين)	**lean years** سنوات عصيبه	

Don't get confused

park	حديقة عامه- محميه	bark	يمبح
park	يركن	break	راحه
learn	يتعلم	educate	يعلم
protect	يحمي	prevent	يمنع
percent	في المائه	**percentage**	نسبه مئويه
expire	تنتهي صلاحيه	exist	يتواجد
exert	يبذل	**expert**	خبير
a long+ n	طويل	along	بامتداد
a tradition	تقليد	traditional	تقليدي
most	معظم	utmost	اقصي
lead	يؤدي	load	حموله
hell	جحيم	hill	تل
cross	يعبر	across	عبر
species	فصائل	spicy	لاذع - حراق
trek	يذهب في رحله صعبه	truck	شاحنه
dangerous	خطير	endangered	معرض للخطر
tame	اليف	wild	بري- متوحشس
isolate	يعزل	insulate	يغطي بماده عازله
except	ماعدا	accept	يقبل
endangered	معرض للخطر	dangerous	خطير

Collocations

bring problems	يسبب مشكلات
start university	يبدأ دراسة جماعية
create jobs	يوفر وظائف
the meeting is **in progress**	اللقاء شغال
try a hobby	يجرب ممارسة هواية
have a reason	لديه مبرر
have a holiday	يحصل علي أجازة
have an impact	له أثر
have a good time	يقضي وقت سعيد
go trekking	يذهب في رحلة سير
introduce a low	يصدر قانون

Expressions

go diving = **go** for a drive	يذهب للغوص	**make** sure	يتأكد
the komodo National Park	حديقة كومود الوطنيه	its beach with pink sand	شاطئها من الرمال الورديه
on the second day	في اليوم الثاني	took a taxi to	يأخذ تاكسي الي
trekked into the desert	رحل في الصحراء	**lean** over the balcony	تتكئ علي الشرفه
sailed along the river	ابحر علي طول النهر	**such** a remote place	مثل هذا المكان البعيد
all around the world	حول العالم	**across** the Sahara	عبر الصحراء الكبري
climb to the top of a hill	تسلق الي اعلي التل	the wind **blew** my hat off	هبت الرياح قبعتي
keep as a souvenir	تبقي كتذكار	here and there	هنا و هناك

`most of the time	معظم الوقت	take photos	يلتقط صور
there's nothing to do	لا يوجد شئ يجب القيام به	a tiny village with no shops	قريه صغير بلا محلات
watching a programme on TV	يشاهد برنامج علي التلفزيون	**during** the school holidays	خلال العطلات المدرسيه
Environmentally-friendly natural materials	مواد طبيعيه صديقه للبيئه	**Along** the sea	بجوار البحر
Endangered wildlife	الحياة البرية المهددة بالانقراض	**Giant** turtles	سلحفاة عملاقة
getting away	الهروب او الاسترخاء فى مكان بعيد	I'm over the moon	اننى فى غاية السعادة
something went wrong	لقد حدث شيىء ما خطأ	loads of things to do	كثير من الاشياء مطلوبة العمل
along the red seacoast	بطول ساحل البحر الاحمر	I always **make** sure	دائما اتأكد
the Mediterranean sea	البحر الابيض المتوسط	hobbies I would to try	الهوايات التى اود ان اجربها
my friends are away or busy	اصدقائى بعيدا او مشغولين	**cause** a problem	يسبب مشكله
have a good time	يقضى وقتا سعيدا	**find** a solution to	يجد حل ل
go on a cruise	يذهب في رحلة نهرية	go on a boat trip	يذهب في رحلة بالقارب

Listening Text

Luca: *Last summer, I decided not to go on holiday to Greece with my friends, but do something different.*

Klara: *So where did you go?*

Luca: *Well, as I'm studying Biology I thought I'd go to Indonesia to find out more about the orangutans there. So, I booked a holiday with an ecotourism company and went to Borneo.*

Klara: *What was it like?*

Luca: *A bit of a disaster although I did love the rainforests. When we got to Jakarta, we caught an internal flight to Borneo, but my luggage never arrived so, I had to buy new clothes. The next morning, we took a boat up the river to the orangutan centre and while I was leaning out of the boat to take photos, I dropped my camera.*

Klara: *Oh, no. Did you manage to get it back?*

Luca: *No way, the river's really deep, so I just had to leave it, but I was very annoyed, but at least I had my phone. It took two days to get to the centre so while we were sitting on the boat, the guide told us all about the orangutans and what the conservationists are doing there. It sounded really exciting. When we arrived, the guide introduced us to the people working there and then we had dinner.*

Klara: *What was the food like?*

Luca: *It was mainly rice and vegetables, but they were very spicy. I don't like spicy food, so I only ate the rice. By the end of the week, I was eating the vegetables and fish though as I was so hungry.*

Klara: Well, I'm glad to hear you're not such a fussy eater anymore. What did you do every day?
Luca: We got up about six every morning as that's when the sun rises, had breakfast and then trekked into the forest to learn about the orangutans from the people who are looking after them.
Klara: Did you feed them?
Luca: No, they're wild animals, not pets.
We just observed them, made notes and took photos. We also learnt about other animals, birds and insects in the rainforests. Unfortunately, at the end of the first week, a spider bit me while I was sleeping and my arm swelled up.
Klara: So what happened?
Luca: I had to go to hospital – but as the nearest hospital was 200 km away, I had to go by helicopter. I stayed there for a week all alone and then went back to the centre, but as soon as I got back I was ill. One of the tourists was making the dinner that night and he wasn't a good cook. He didn't clean the fish properly and everybody was sick. I'm staying at home this summer!

Reading

What is ecotourism

Ecotourism is about providing holidays to places which are often **endangered** and **isolated**. The holidays are designed to have a limited **impact** on the local **environment** and to educate tourists about conservation.

Madagascar is famous for its ecotourism and wants to protect its ecosystem (the animals and plants in its environment). 80% of the animals, and 90% of the plants that live there don't exist anywhere else in the word. Lemurs, for example, only live in Madagascar



Egypt is developing ecotourism to protect the environments along the Red Sea coast. Tourists can stay in hotels built of environmentally friendly natural **materials**. friendly natural materials. When tourists go diving they are taught how to avoid damaging the fish and corals.



The Galapagos Islands in **Ecuador** are famous for the **unique** animals, such as the giant turtles which live there. Ecuador makes sure that tourism is **sustainable**. Only a limited number of people can visit islands each year, so the animals and their environment are safe



The Komodo National Park in **Indonesia** is a popular ecotourism destination. Much of Indonesia's endangered wildlife, including the Komodo dragon, can only be found here. The National Park is also famous for its beach with pink sand.



Reading Text (2)

This is me on our hotel balcony in Sharm El-Sheikh. It's brilliant here and there are loads of things to do. I'm over the moon visiting Egypt. The weather's really hot so we spend most of the time in the water. My sister and I are learning to dive with some other teenagers at the resort. I love diving; it's so relaxing and you can see all these amazing fish in the sea. I want to get an underwater camera so I can take photos of them. Last week, we were in Luxor and visited the ancient temples there. I'm not usually interested in history, but I actually found them fascinating and am really glad we went there.	 James

Reading Text (3)

Day 10 of my summer holidays! I'm so bored – all my friends are away or busy with their family and I'm stuck here at home. The weather's awful and there's nothing to do. Last week, I went to stay with my grandparents for a few days, which was nice, but they live in a tiny village with no shops. I was helping Granddad in his garden most of the time. He grows all his own vegetables – he says it's cheaper than buying them. Maybe I'll try and grow some lettuce in our garden when it stops raining. I was watching a programme on TV this morning about gardening– maybe I'll have a new hobby!	 Katy

Workbook: adverts for four different holidays.

A beach break

Do you want to relax in a quiet and peaceful place? Escape from noisy streets and leave your busy city life behind. Visit this amazing paradise. Enjoy the sunshine on isolated beaches and swim in clean, clear water.

Adventure time

Are you tired of the same old, boring places? Are you looking for an active holiday? Then this is the holiday for you. Day one starts with diving, then day two takes you climbing in the beautiful Alpine mountains.

Eco-trip

Ecotourism is a new way to travel for a new kind of traveller. You can go trekking through the Andes and explore ancient Machu Picchu with a local guide. You can enjoy peace and quiet or you can meet the local people, all without damaging the environment.

A cruise to remember

Why not take a calm cruise around the Caribbean? On board our modern cruise ship, you can enjoy great food and forget your worries in our relaxing restaurants. We stop at six different islands where you can visit the crowded markets and see many unusual sights.

(Model Essay نموذج لمقال) What are the benefits of volunteering?

Volunteering means to carry out a duty or a job without expecting repayment. The concept is very popular in the advanced or rich countries such as United States, Australia, United Kingdom and other western nation. There are many benefits one can gain through volunteering. When one volunteers to help out someone such as a friend, teacher or parent, one is immediately seen as selfless and helpful. When you help a teacher to clean the classroom or get involved in cleanliness campaign حملة نظافة at the school level or other community projects. In addition, volunteering with an organization such as orphanages دار ايتام، community centers and other non-profit organizations such as the Society for Prevention of Cruelty عنفtowards Animal and other welfare organizations allows you to interact تتفاعل with society at large. In addition to helping, these organizations carry out their duties; you not only gain experience but can learn a variety of skills. This is especially beneficial مفيد for students. Even though one is not being paid, through volunteering time, effort and skills one would learn more than what money can buy. You can learn to be bold شجاع, independent as well express your opinions and gain communication and interpersonal skills.

Thus, the responsibility falls on the teachers to encourage students to volunteer their times not only for school activities but to spend their leisure in helping out community-based organizations. Volunteering also allows one to become more mature at a relatively younger age. When you are exposed to volunteering at a young age be it at the home front, school or their organizations, you would learn the importance of responsibility in carrying out your duties to the best of your ability. Volunteering also exposes يعرض one to many interesting ideas and issues. For example, if you volunteer your time regularly at a charity organization, you would learn how the organization works and the importance of team work, and other essential ideas related to the day-to-day operations of the organizations. You will not only enhance your general knowledge, but also learn how to deal with problems, challenges as well dealing with different types of personalities.

Thus, there are many benefits to be gained by volunteering. Students in particular should be allowed to participate in volunteer activities to enhance their knowledge as well learn useful interpersonal and organizational skills.

1- Say the meaning of the words then complete the exercise

Ecotourism- impact- isolated- materials- environment- sustainable- unique

1-there are many…………..animals in the world, which we need to save.
2-some animals live in very…………parts of the world and people never see them.
3-the tourist industry has a big…………………on the local town.
4-the natural world around us is the……………
5-it's important to only local……………when building an Eco hotel.
6-the komodo dragon is ………………to Indonesia. It doesn't live anywhere else.

7-……………is for people who want a holiday which respect the environmental.
8-we need to be sure that tourism here is…………otherwise people will stop coming.

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- …………… is about providing holidays to places wh ich are often endangered
a - Ecotourism b - Ecology c - Economy d – Economics
2 -There are a few pandas left in the world today .Pandas are ……………
a - danger b - existence c - endangered d – dangerous
3- He lived in an …………… house. There were no houses beside his.
a - insulated b - isolated c - insane d - insulation
4- Pollution has a bad …………… on the environment
a – affect b – affection c – effects d – impact
5- Don't worry about the books .the school …………… them for free.
a – provide b – prevent c - prohibit d – pollute
6- The government should care for those with …………… income .
a - high b – limited c - affluent d – wealthy
7- Ecotourism helps tourists to be educated about ……………
a - reservation b – preference c – conservation d - conversation
8- Madagascar is famous for its ecotourism and wants to …………… its ecosystem
a - protect b – damage c - destroy d – get rid of
9 -The …………… means the animals and the plants in an environment
a – system b – systematic c – ecosystem d – systemize
10- Madagascar has 80%of the animals and 90% of the plants that don't …… anywhere
a - exact b – exist c - exceed d – extract
11- …………… only live in Madagascar
a – Cows b - Monkeys c - Buffaloes d – Lemurs
12- Egypt is providing ecotourism to protect the environments …………… the Red Sea
a – along b – a long c – long d – belong
13- Tourists can stay in hotels …………… of environmental friendly natural materials
a – are built b – building c – built d – which built
14- I want to go to Hurghada because I want to …………… diving in the Red Sea.
a - play b - go c – do d – make
15- He wanted his daughter …………… a happy life.
a – having b – have c – to have d – had
16- Tourists who go diving should avoid damaging the fish and the ……………
a - corals b – collars c – callers d – cooler
17 -The Galapagos islands in Ecuador are famous for the …………… animals .
a – quality b – equality c – unique d – lucky
18- Ecuador is famous for the unique animals such …………… the giant turtles living there
a – like b – so c – alike d – as
19 -The word sustainable is equal in meaning to the word ……………
a – continuous b - finished c – vanished d – disappeared
20 - Safe is the opposite of ……………
a – security b - hazardous c – secure d – safety
21- A limited number of tourists …………… the islands every year
a – visit b – visits c – has visited d – have visited
22- He didn't use his real name, he used a ……………

a – pen-name b – surname c – family name d – nickname

23- The Komodo National park in Indonesia is a popular ecotourism ……………

a – destiny b – disaster c – destination d – destruction

24- The Komodo …………… is only found in the National Park in Indonesia

a – elephant b – dragon c – turtle d – lion

25- In the past our houses were made from mud bricks and primitive ……………

a – materials b – matters c – mutiny d – matron

26- Much of Indonesia's ……………, including the Komodo dragon can only be found there

a – happy life b – good life c – wildlife d - tame

27- We always take …………… to answer the questions.

a – after b – turns c – place d – to

28- The National Park is also famous for its beach with its pink ……………

a – dress b – scarf c – jeans d – sand

29 -There are many …………… animals in the world which we should save

a – endangered b - dangerous c – danger d – dangerously

30- Some animals live in …………… parts and people never see them.

a – insulated b – isolated c – near d – nearby

31-The tourist industry has had a big…………… on the local town

a – packet b – infect c – packed d – impact

32- The natural world around us is the ……………

a – environment b – wildlife c – material d – destination

33- The opposite of wild is ……………

a – team b – worse c – domestic d – evil

34- It is important to use only local …………… when you build an eco-hotel

a – title b – mattress c – material d – molar

35- The Komodo dragon is …………… to Indonesia . It doesn't live anywhere else

a – sustainable b – unique c – equal d – antique

36- …………… is for people who want a holiday which respects the environment

a – Industry b – Agriculture c – Culture d – Ecotourism

37-We need to make sure that tourism here is …………… otherwise people will stop coming

a – sustainable b – suspend c – summon d – secret

38-Why do you think the …………… disappearing from the natural world.

a – water b – orange c – orangutan d – organs

39- The …………… give food to the orangutan..

a – conversations b – conservationists c – national d– conservation

40- Her arm was beginning to …………… up where the bee had stung her..

a – swell b – swing c – sew d – suit

41- I hate having to …………… up that hill with all the groceries

a – truck b – trek c – trick d – trunk

42- Don't …………… out of the window or you will fall.

a – lean b – lane c – lend d – lure

43-I prefer having my chicken ……………

a – spices b – species c – spicy d – speck

46- The fire in the Amazon …………… will contribute to the increase of global warming

a – rain b – gardens c – fields d – rainforests

The past simple tense زمن الماضي البسيط

☺Form التكوين

1-التصريف الاول للفعل مضافا إليه ied – ed – d مثل

play	يلعب	played	cook	يطبخ	cooked
finish	ينهي	finished	visited	يزور	visited
die	يموت	die	tie	يربط	tied
lie	يكذب	lied	decide	يقرر	decided
cry	يصرخ	cried	fry	يقلي	fried
try	يحاول	tried	study	يذاكر	studied

☺ الشكل الاخر هو التصريف الثاني للفعل مثل :

give	يعطي	gave	write	يكتب	wrote
make	يصنع	made	catch	يمسك	caught
have	يملك	had	win	يفوز	won
do	يفعل	did	am,is,are	يكون	was-were
eat	يأكل	ate	read	يقرأ	read
leave	يترك	left	see	يرى	saw
cost	يكلف /يتكف	cost	lie	يكذب	Lied
burn	يحرق	burnt	lay	تبيض /تلد	Laid
learn	يتعلم	learnt	lie	يغفو	lay

Negative:

never+التصريف الثاني للفعل **didn't + inf**

-she learned a lot throughout her life.

- -she didn't learn much throughout her life.
- -she never learned throughout her life.

Question:

Did	**+**	**subject**	**+ inf ?**
Was\ were	**+**	**subject**	**+adj /n?**

- -A: Did he eat the cake?
- B: No, he didn't

- -A: Was she at the circus?

- B: No, she wasn't

Key words:

once	ذات مرة	**day**	ذات يوم
past	ماذي	**ancient**	قديم
yesterday	امس	**previous**	سابق
the other day	امس	**ago**	مضي – منذ
How long ago	متي	**in +**	تاريخ ماضي
last week	الاسبوع الماضي	**last year**	السنه الماضيه
last……			

- -The Pharaohs (rule- ruled) in Egypt in the past.
- -He (works- - worked) in a bank 5 years ago.
- -Yesterday I can (run- ran) into my old friend.
- -How long ago (did you visit- have you visited) the pyramids.

Passive:

Was\ were + p.p

- |-the report (checked- was checked) properly.
- -My car (repaired – was repaired) in the garage.

Usage:

1-حدث بدأ وانتهي في الماضي في وقت محدد:

- -I travelled to London in 2003.

2-لوصف احداث متتابعه في الماضي:

- -I got up late so I washed and wore my clothes then went down the street and waved to a taxi.

3-حدث استغرق وقت في الماضي وانتهي في الماضي

- -I lived in Alex for 5years = it means that I left Alex.

4-للتعبير عن المضارع في حالة التمني والرغبة وهنا مع:

– I wish	ماضي بسيط + فاعل	(تمني شئ في المضارع)
–If only	ماضي بسيط +فاعل	(تمني شئ في المضارع)
–I'd rather	ماضي بسيط +فاعل	(من الافضل في المضارع)

- -I wish I had a lot of money now.
- -I'd rather they were with us now.
- -It's time he helped us in this problem.
- -If only I were taller now.

5-للتعبير عن العادات وهناك اساليب كثيرة للتعبير عن العادة في الماضي:

1-always \ often \ usually + ماضي بسيط

- -when he was young he always played in the street.

2- used to + inf كان معتاد علي

- -When he was a student , he used to study a lot.

3- Was \ Were used to + v - ing كان معتاد علي

- -He was used to getting up late when he was a teenager.

4-become\ got used to + v- ing
-كان معتاد علي ولكن اخذ العاده بالتدريج كأنني بقول بدأ يعتاد علي

- -when he felt that his father become sad, he got used to paying attention to his study.

5- subject was \ were in the habit of +v- ing
6-It was (his) habit to + inf
7-His \ Her habit was to + inf

موضوع **used to** بالتفصيل

تعبر عن عاده في الماضي لم تعد في الحاضر

- **-He used to get up late.**

-كان متعود في الماضي الاستيقاظ متأخرا أي الآن يستيقظ مبكرا

- -Now, he no longer gets up late.
- Now, he doesn't get up late any more \ any longer.
- -Now, he gets up early.

- **be used to + v- ing** — عند التحدث عن العادات
- **be used to + inf** — يستخدم لكي
- **used to + inf** — اثبات
- **didn't use to + inf** — نفي

- -Really he didn't use to smoke. Now he smokes.
- -He didn't use to be rich , Now he is rich.

يمكن استخدام would + inf للتعبير عن التكرار في الماضي

- -Every morning, I would run for 3 kilometres.
- -My grandfather would always say "you're failure"

☺ولكن لا نستخدم would لتدل علي التكرار مع افعال الحب والكراهيه

Possess – own – have – to be

-He used to be brave when he was young. ☑
-He would be brave when he was young. ☒

❁يمكن استخدام did + inf للتعبير عن التأكيد علي حدوث شئ في الماضي

-I did go to the office = I really went to the office.

لا تنسي:

فاعل **last +** ماضي بسيط **when +** جمله ماضي بسيط

the hast time فاعل ماضي بسيط **when +** جمله ماضي بسيط

-I last saw Mona when I was in Alex.
-The last time I saw Mona was when I was in Alex.

1-Choose the correct answer (practice)

1-He left for Paris two days……… **(ago – for – since – last)**
2-Talat Harb…Misr Bank several years ago. **(find – found – founded – finds)**
3-………..he at home last night? **(Was – Were – Did – Could)**
4-……..they watch the film last week? **(Were – Can – Did – Do)**
5-Where……you born? **(were – are – was – did)**
6-I studied English literature…2005. **(since – for – at – in)**
7-Nora……….at school yesterday. **(isn't – wasn't – didn't be – doesn't be)**
8-When I was young, I ……play football on Fridays.
(used – am used – used to – was used to)
9-Are camels still used to…..things on their backs?
(carrying – carried – carries – carry)
10-Why……millions of people go to America in the 19th century?
(do – did – have – had)
11-They…..the telegram last night.
(receive – have received – receives – received)
12-We……to go to Hurghada last summer as our favourite resort.
(preferred – had preferred – are preferring – prefer)
13-I……travel to France when I was young.
(use to – got used to – used to – was used to)
14-Our car…..down and we had to walk three kilometres.
(broke – breaks – broken – breaking)
15-Omar…..across the Sahara last year.
(was cycling – cycled – has cycled – cycles)
16-Yesterday, we……some beautiful fish in the Red Sea.
(are seeing – were seeing – see – saw)
17-The tourists…….swimming in the sea. It was too dirty.

(don't enjoy – didn't enjoy – weren't enjoy – never enjoy)

18-My grandparents……a holiday last summer.

(never had – never has – have never had – never have)

19-Who……the door?

(you opened – did you open – opened – were you opened)

20-……….., a lorry hit a motorbike.

(Yesterday – Tomorrow – Ago – Now)

21-Adel read an interesting story…………….

(every day – ago – now – the other day)

22-I…….lunch at home yesterday.

(haven't – hadn't – don't have – didn't have)

23-He usually…….his grandparents when he was on holiday.

(visit – visits – visited – visiting)

24-My team won the match and I …….a goal.

(scored – score – have score – scores)

The Past continuous زمن الماضى المستمر Tense

Form → **was , were + V- ing**

- يدل على استمرار حدث فى الماضى

- Sara was studying all night yesterday .

- أى أنها كانت تذاكر طوال الليل أمس

- I said to him Hello but he didn't answer because he (spoke – **was speaking**) on the phone then ,

- قواعد متعلقة بزمن الماضى المستمر

- حدث قطع حدث — ماضى بسيط → ماضى مستمر → **while /as/Just as/when**

- Just as I (studied – **was studying**) the light went out .
- While I (was watching TV , my father (**came** – was coming) .
- I fell down while I (played – **was playing**)

- هناك قاعدة خاصة بـ When و هى الأفضل فى حالة حدث قطع حدث

When → ماضى بسيط → ماضى مستمر

- و لذا نمشى عليها فى حالة التصحيح

- When I was walking , I saw an accident .

و يكون التصحيح أما نستبدل when بـ While أو

- When I saw an accident, I was walking .

حدثان مستمران فى الماضى — ماضى مستمر → ماضى مستمر → **While/Just as/when**

- While he was studying , his sister (played – was playing)

During + n **While** +v-ing في حالة حذف الفاعل

في حالة الاختيار بين While /During وبعدها V-ing تكون while

(**During** – while) the film , I slept .

- While (**I was sleeping** – sleeping) , someone entered our flat .

لا يفضل حذف الفاعل عندما يكون الفاعل مختلف

يمكن حذف while بالشكل الآتى.

- While I was walking in the street , I ran into my friend .
- Walking in the street , I ran into my friend .

When + ماضى مستمر ماضى بسيط = on + v-ing ماضى بسيط

- When I was playing , I fell to the ground .
- On playing , I fell to the ground .

عندما نجد then بمعنى " فى ذلك الحين " نختار ماضى مستمر .

- I didn't go because I (did – **was doing**) my homework then .

عندما نجد تركيبة مشابه بـــ at 7 p.m yesterday

- I (slept – **was sleeping**) at 6 a.m yesterday .

عندما نجد .... and .... between نختار ماضى مستمر
عندما نجد .... to..................... from نختار ماضى مستمر

- Between 7 and 9 yesterday I (took – **was taking**) my exam .
- و لكن مع الفعل live تكون التركيبة السابقة الماضى البسيط أفضل من الماضى المستمر
- Between 1999 and 2003 , I (**lived** – was living) in Cairo .

إذا تم تحديد عدد مرات الحدث فى الماضى و كان الاختيار بين الماضى البسيط و الماضى المستمر فإننا نختار ماضى بسيط مثل

- I (**phoned** – was phoning) him 3 times but no one answered me .

لا نستخدم to be فى زمن الماضى المستمر

While he (**was** – was being) in Cairo , he met his friend

ملحوظة معنى

يمكن استخدام مضارع بسيط أو مضارع مستمر بعد while حسب المعنى مثل :-

- I even think of you while I'm asleep .
- You should concentrate while you are studying .

لا نستخدم الماضلى المستمر مع الافعال الخاصة بالشعور و الحواس و الادراك مثل :-

Know – understand- see –believe – like – hate – think يعتقد

Passive

Was , were +V-ing → was ,were being +P.P

☯Somebody phoned me while the dinner was cooking (**was being cooked**)
❆While the plan was making , Ali came (**being made**)

يمكن استخدام whileفى المقارنة بين الاشخاص و المواقف لبيان الاختلاف

While some students like English , others don't

يمكن استخدام الماضى المستمر مع because

He couldn't answer the phone because he **was sleeping**

Choose the correct answer: Practice

1-Some people….on the farm from morning to afternoon that day.
(was worked – were worked – was working – were working)
2-Some boys….when the teacher entered the classroom.
(fought – were fought – was fighting – were fighting)
3-What…..you doing when I called? **(are – were – did – had)**
4-My car…..down as I was driving to work.
(stops – stopped – was stopping – was being stopped)
5-While I….at the club, I played tennis.
(was – was being – am – am being)
6-Nada….when I rang the doorbell. I felt sorry for waking her up.
(slept – was slept – has slept – was sleeping)
7-…..the film, I ate popcorn and drank juice.
(As – While – During – When)
8-…..watching the film, I ate popcorn.
(As – While – During – As soon as)
9-During yesterday's match, most players…..fit.
(hadn't been – weren't – weren't being – have been)
10-I….my toys when I was young.
(was loving – was being loved – loved – loving)
11-He….the money he needed.
(gave – didn't give – wasn't given – gives)
12-While I was riding my bike, I ……to music.
(was listening – listened – listen – listens)
13-Adel entered…..his mother was making lunch.
(during – after – before – while)
14-We saw a terrible accident as we…..to the airport.
(drove – were driving – drive – are driving)
15-Dad was talking when I …….into the room.
(was coming – am coming – came – come)
16-I wish I …..a better time.
(have – had – had had – was had)
17-I wish I ……a better time last year.
(have – had – had had – was had)
18-It's time you…..back my dictionary.
(gave – give – gives – was given)
19-I'd rather……here than in Cairo.
(live – lived – lives – had lived)
20-I'd rather I ……here than in Cairo.
(live – lived – lives – had lived)
21-……touching the pan, Mona cried in pain.
(While – On – When – During)
22-While he…..on holiday, he always helped his mother.

(was being – were being – was – had)

23-Just as the player....the ball, he hurt himself.

(kicks – kicking – is kicking – was kicking)

24-......on holiday, I had a great time. (While – On – When – During)

25-Samar was painting.....she spilt the paint on the floor.

(when – while – as – just as)

26-.....my arrival home, I saw no one was there.

(During – On – While – As)

27- I.....watching a film on TV last night.

(used to enjoy – enjoyed – was enjoying – would enjoy)

28-I waited at the door until my mother......it at last.

(opened – had opened – has opened – was opening)

29-Don't open the door until I ......you.

(tell – told – had told – was told)

30- While....., the baby was laughing to the doctor.

(examining – was examining – being examined – examined)

Choose the correct answer

1-Nesma first met her best friend when she................... at primary school.

a) has been b) was being c) was d) is

2. What .... at midday yesterday?

a) are you doing b) were you doing c) you were doing d) have you done

3. The car.................. fast when it hit the tree.

a) was moving b) moves c) has moved d) is moving

4. Yesterday evening, we .... for our English test when all the lights went out.

a) revised b) were revising c) were revised d) have revised

5. What .... when I called you? You sounded very busy.

a) did you do b) you were doing c) you did d) were you doing

6. How fast ……...................when the accident happened?

a) did you drive b) were you driving c) you driven d) have driven

7. The television was on , but nobody ……………….

a) had watched b) was watching c) watched d) was watched

8. We were sitting in the garden when it suddenly …………to rain.

a) was starting b) started c) had started d) has started

9. Did you hear what she said ? – No, I ……..........about something else.

a) thought b) was thinking c) have thought d) think

10. While I was reading a library book , I …........…a 10-pound note in it.

a) was finding b) found c) had found d) have found

11. While I was reading the newspaper, the telephone ………

a) has rung b) is ringing c) rings d) rang

12. …..............seeing the accident, the motorists drove more carefully.

a) On b) Without c) Despite d) Over

13. She ....….. a magazine when suddenly somebody knocked at the door.

a) read b) reads c) was reading d) had read

14. While my mother was cooking, my father…………TV.

a) was watching b) has watched c) watching d) watched

15. We…………a meeting at work this morning when suddenly all the office lights went out.
a) were having b) have had c) had d) have
While I ………….on holiday, I met my fiancée.
16. a) was b) was being c) have been d) being
17. Mona phoned her cousin while……………..to Cairo.
a) travelled b) was travelling c) travelling d) travel
19. I fell asleep while ……………my homework.
a) was doing b) doing c) did d) had done
20. I ……………… my homework while my brother was watching television.
a) doing b) have done c) was doing d) had done
21. Hoda .... the room while Mona was making dinner .
a) cleaned b) was cleaning c) is cleaning d) cleans
22. The bird ………………on the branch of a tree when the farmer shot it.
a) sat b) sits c) sitting d) was sitting
23. ………….. the storm, several car accidents happened.
a) During b) While c) As d) When
24. I couldn't answer the phone yesterday because I …………… .
a) slept b) was sleeping c) have slept d) had slept
25. The sun …………….. when I woke up this morning.
a) shone b) shines c) shine d) was shining
26. While ………………… in the street, I saw an accident.
a) was walking b) walks c) walking d) walked
27. They ……………… to music while their mother was cooking.
a) were listening b) listened c) listen d) have listened
28. Were you talking? - No. Sir, we ……….. our homework.
a) wrote b) were wrote c) were writing d) write
29. My mother was cooking dinner when I ………………….. home.
a) had arrived b) was arriving c) have arrived d) arrived
30. While my mother was cooking, my father………………………TV.
a. was watching b. has watched c. watching d. watched
25. …………seeing the snake, she felt scared
a) During b) When c) On d) Before
29. While Dalia was reading a book, Dina .. ………….. television.
a) watching b) had watched c) watched d) was watching
30. She ……….. a magazine when somebody knocked at the door
a) read b) reads c) was reading d) had read
33. Yesterday evening, we .... for our English test when all the lights went out.
a) revised b) were revising c) were revised d) have revised
34. The phone rang while we………………lunch.
a) was cooking b) cooked c) were cooking d) having cooked
36. While I was reading the newspaper, the telephone ………
a) has rung b) is ringing c) rings d) rang
37. …..............seeing the accident, the motorists drove more carefully.
a) On b) Without c) Despite d) Over
40. I............ a mystery movie on T.V. when suddenly the electricity went out.
a) had watched b) watched c) was watching d) watching



Unit 1 Lesson 5 Treasure Island Chapter 1



Jim Hawkins:

I'll start by writing about the time when my father owned an inn called the **Admiral Benbow**, many years ago. I remember the day when a man walked into the inn. He was tall and strong, with an old blue coat and a scar on his face. He looked around him. "This is a nice, quiet place. I'll stay here. Please, take this up to my room," he said, pointing to a large wooden box. "You can call me **Captain**. And this is for you," he continued, handing my father three or four gold coins.

The **Captain** was usually a quiet man. He spent his days walking on the beach or on the cliffs. When he came back, he always asked, "Did any sailors visit the inn today?" At first, we thought he wanted to find some other sailors, but later we realised that he didn't want any sailors to find him. In the evenings, the **Captain** sometimes told stories about his time at sea. My father was worried that **nobody** would want to visit the inn because they would be frightened by the **Captain's** stories, but I think people liked them. The **Captain** stayed at the inn for months. He did not give us any more money for his room and my father did not dare to ask him for more. One morning, the **Captain** went for a walk along the beach. I was helping my mother to make breakfast when another man walked into the inn. He was thin and pale, with three fingers on his left hand. He sat down and asked, "Is this table here for my friend **Bill**?" I told him that I did not know **Bill** and said that the table was for the **Captain**. "Well, my friend **Bill** might say that he's the **Captain**," he said. "He has a scar on his face and likes to tell a story. Is that him?" "Yes," I said. "He's gone for a walk." "Which way did he walk?" he asked. I pointed towards the beach. The man stood up and waited by the door for the **Captain** to return. When the **Captain** saw the man, he looked pale and ill. "Black Dog!" the **Captain** said. "That's right," he replied. "I've found my friend **Bill**! We've had a lot of adventures since I lost these fingers!" I left them to talk. Then suddenly there were loud shouts and both men stood up and ran outside. The **Captain** had a sword and then I saw **Black Dog** running away with blood on his arm. The man continued running until we could not see him. The **Captain** walked back into the inn. He looked ill and suddenly he fell over. I thought perhaps he was hurt from the fight. At that moment, the **doctor** arrived to see my father who was sick.

"Help us, **Dr Livesy**! The **Captain** is hurt!" said my mother. The doctor looked at him and said, "He is not hurt, but he is very ill. Help me to take him upstairs." We took the **Captain** up to his bedroom and the doctor gave him some medicine. The **Captain** stayed in bed, but he was not quiet. He told me about his travels at sea, and said that he had something which people wanted.

"**Black Dog** is not as bad as some of the other men." he said, "They all want to find me. Tell me if you see them!" That evening, my father died. I felt terrible and forgot all about the strange things that the **Captain** told me. Then, a week later, I saw a blind man coming down the road towards the inn. He stopped outside the door when he was near and asked, "Where am I? Will a kind person help me?" "You are at the **Admiral Benbow** Inn in Black Hill Cove," I told him. At that moment, he grabbed my hand. "Take me to the Captain!" he said. "Take me to him now!" I walked with the blind man into the inn and took him to the Captain. The Captain looked very surprised to see him. "Now, Bill, stay where you are. I can hear you. Take this." He then put something in the Captain's hand, turned round and left. The Captain looked at what the man gave him. "Ten o'clock!" he said. "I have time!" Then the Captain suddenly fell to the floor. He was dead. I found my mother and we talked about what we should do. We knew that the Captain had a box in his room and it probably had money in it. The blind man and **Black Dog** probably wanted this. I thought about taking the box to **Dr Livesy**, but I did not want to leave my mother. We knew that we were in danger. We decided to go to the nearest village and ask our neighbours for help guarding the inn. However, none of the people in the village wanted to help us. They did not come back with us, but one man went to tell **Dr Livesy**. Another man said that we could have his gun. It was dark when we returned to the inn. We found the key to the box in the captain's jacket. I also saw the message that the blind man gave to the **Captain**. It said, "You have until ten o'clock tonight." We went upstairs and my mother soon opened the box with the key. Inside, we found some clothes, some guns, some papers and other things. We also found a bag with some coins inside.





"We only have time until ten o'clock," I said. "Let's leave before the blind man and Black Dog return." "I'll only take the money which the **Captain** owes us," my mother said, opening the bag. We stood up to leave, and I decided to take the papers from the box, too. We walked as quickly as we could back towards the village, but as we

walked, we heard the sound of people in the road behind us. “Take the money and run,” said my mother. “I’m too weak to continue.” I did not want to leave her, so we stopped under a bridge, where we could hide in the dark.

ترجمة الفصل الاول

جيم هوكينز

سأبدأ بالكتابة عن الوقت الذي كان فيه والدي يمتلك نزلًا يسمى (الأدميرال بينبو) ، قبل عدة سنوات. أتذكر اليوم الذي دخل فيه رجل إلى النزل. كان طويل القامة وقويا ، ومرتديا معطفا أزرق قديم وله ندبة على وجهه. نظر حوله

"هذا مكان جميل وهادئ. سأبقى هنا." هو قال ،" من فضلك ، خذ هذا إلى غرفتي." واشار الى صندوق خشبي كبير

"يمكنك ان تنادينى كابتن. وتابع قائلا "هذا من أجلك" ، واعطى والدي ثلاث أو أربع عملات ذهبية. وكان كابتن عادة رجلا هادئا. قضى أيامه يمشي على الشاطئ أو على المنحدرات. عندما عاد ، كان يسأل دائمًا ، "هل قام أي بحار بزيارة النزل اليوم؟" في البداية ، اعتقدنا أنه يريد العثور على بعض البحارة الآخرين ، لكن في وقت لاحق أدركنا أنه لا يريد أي بحارة ان يعثروا عليه.

في المساء ، كان يخبرنا كابتن أحيانًا حكايات عن وقته في البحر. كان والدي قلقًا من عدم رغبة أي شخص في زيارة النزل لأنهم سيخافون من قصص كابتن ، لكنني أعتقد أن الناس أحبوها

بقي الكابتن في النزل لعدة أشهر. لم يعطنا أي أموال إضافية لغرفته ولم يجرؤ والدي على طلب المزيد

في صباح أحد الأيام ، ذهب الكابتن للتمشي على الشاطئ. كنت أساعد والدتي فى الإفطار عندما دخل رجل آخر إلى النزل. كان نحيفاً شاحبًا ، وله ثلاثة أصابع فى يده اليسرى. جلس وسأل ، "هل هذه الطاولة هنا لصديقي بيل؟"

أخبرته أنني لا أعرف بيل وقلت إن الطاولة مخصصة لكابتن

قال: "حسنًا ، قد يقول صديقي بيل إنه الكابتن". "لديه ندبة فى وجهه ويحب أن يروي حكاية. هل هذا هو؟ "

"نعم انا قلت. "لقد ذهب للتمشي".

"فى أي طريق مشى؟"

أشرت نحو الشاطئ. وقف الرجل وانتظر عند الباب حتى يعود الكابتن

عندما رأى القبطان الرجل ، بدا شاحبًا ومريضًا" بلاك دوج!" قال الكابتن.

أجاب: "هذا صحيح". "لقد وجدت بيل صديقي! حدثت لنا الكثير من المغامرات منذ أن فقدت هذه الأصابع!"

تركتهم ليتحدثوا. ثم فجأة كانت هناك صيحات عالية وقف الرجلان وجروا الى خارج المنزل. كان مع الكابتن سيف ، ثم رأيت بلاك دوج يهرب وعلى ذراعه دم. استمر الرجل في الجرى حتى لم نتمكن من رؤيته

مشى الكابتن إلى النزل. كان يبدو مريضا وفجأة سقط. اعتقدت انه ربما أصيب من التعارك. وفي تلك اللحظة ، وصل الطبيب لرؤية والدي المريض.

"ساعدنا يا دكتور لايفسي! قالت والدتي إن الكابتن قد أصيب!

نظر إليه الطبيب وقال: "لم يصب بأذى ، لكنه مريض للغاية. ساعدني في اصطحابه إلى الطابق العلوي"

أخذنا الكابتن إلى غرفة نومه وأعطاه الطبيب بعض الأدوية. بقي الكابتن في السرير ، لكنه لم يكن هادئًا. أخبرني عن رحلاته في البحر ، وقال إن لديه شيئًا يريده الناس

"الكلب الأسود ليس سيئًا كبعض الرجال الآخرين." اخبرني إذا رأيتهم" !

في ذلك المساء ، توفي والدي. شعرت بالسوء ونسيت كل شيء عن الأشياء الغريبة التي كان يخبرني بها الكابتن.

وبعدها بأسبوع ، رأيت رجلاً أعمى يسير على الطريق نحو النزل. توقف خارج الباب، عندما اقترب سألني ، "أين أنا؟ هل ممكن يساعدني رجل كريم؟

"أنت في فندق الأميرال بنبو في بلاك هيل كوف" ،انا أخبرته

في تلك اللحظة ، أمسك بيدي "خذني إلى الكابتن!" "خذني إليه الآن"!

مشيت مع الرجل الأعمى في النزل وأخذته إلى الكابتن. بدا الكابتن مندهشًا جدًا عندما راه.

"الآن يا بيل ، ابقى حيث أنت. أستطيع سماعك. خذ هذا. "ثم وضع شيئًا في يد الكابتن ، واستدار وغادر. نظر القبطان إلى ما أعطاه الرجل "الساعة العاشرة!" "الدي الوقت"!

ثم سقط الكابتن فجأة على الأرض ومات .
لقد وجدت أمي وتحدثنا عما يجب أن نفعله. كنا نعلم أن الكابتن لديه صندوق في غرفته وربما كان لديه مال في ذلك. الرجل الأعمى وبلاك دوج ربما أرادوا ذلك. فكرت في أخذ الصندوق إلى الدكتور لايفسي ، لكنني لم أرغب في مغادرة والدتي. كنا نعرف أننا في خطر. قررنا الذهاب إلى أقرب قرية وان نطلب من جيراننا المساعدة في حراسة النزل
وبالرغم مع ذلك ، لم يرغب أي شخص في القرية ان يساعدنا. لم يرجعوا معنا ، لكن رجلاً ذهب ليخبر الدكتور لايفسي. وقال رجل آخر إنه يمكن أن يكون معه سلاحه.
كان الجو ليلا عندما عدنا إلى نزل. لقد وجدنا مفتاح الصندوق في سترة القبطان. رأيت أيضًا الرسالة التي أعطاها الرجل الأعمى للكابتن. قال ، "لديك حتى الساعة العاشرة الليلة".
ذهبنا إلى الطابق العلوي وسرعان ما فتحت أمي الصندوق مع المفتاح. في الداخل وجدنا بعض الملابس وبعض الأسلحة وبعض الأوراق وأشياء أخرى. وجدنا أيضا حقيبة بها بعض العملات المعدنية داخلها.
قلت: "لدينا وقت حتى الساعة العاشرة فقط". "دعونا نغادر قبل أن يعود الرجل الأعمى وبلاك دوج."
قالت والدتي وهي تفتح الحقيبة: "سأأخذ فقط المال الذي يدين لنا به الكابتن".
وقفنا للمغادرة ، وقررت أخذ الأوراق من الصندوق أيضًا. مشينا بأسرع ما يمكننا متجهين نحو القرية ، ولكن بينما كنا نسير ، سمعنا صوت الناس على الطريق خلفنا.
قالت والدتي: "خذ المال واهرب". "أنا ضعيفة جدا لكى اكمل معك."
لم أكن أريد أن أتركها ، لذلك توقفنا تحت الجسر ، حيث يمكننا أن نختبئ في الظلام

New Vocabulary

adventures	مغامرات	blind	كفيف	cliffs	منحدرات صخرية
fingers	اصابع	dead	ميت	frightened	خائف
grab	يجذب / يخطف	guarding	حراسة	gun	بندقية
inn	حانة/فندق صغير	island	جزيرة	leave (left)	يغادر
neighbours	جيران	pale	شاحب	point	يشير
realise	يدرك	sailor	بحار	scar	ندبة/أثر جرح
suddenly	فجأة	surprised	مندهش	sword	سيف
terrible	فظيع	towards	تجاه	treasure	كنز
turn	يتحول	village	قرية	upstairs	الطابق العلوي
come back	يعود	run outside	يجري للخارج	wait by	ينتظر بجوار

Exercises on Chapter 1

1-.......means light in colour.
(Blind – Frightened – Pale – Strong)
2-To.....means to need to pay someone for something that they have done for you or sold to you. **(guard – grab – own – owe)**
3-To......is to take hold of someone or something with a sudden or a violent movement. **(scare – arrest – grab – release)**
4-A/An…is a small hotel, especially an old one in the countryside.
(restaurant – inn – station – corridor)

5-……….means unable to see.

(Frightened – Pale – Blind – Disabled)

6-To…..is to protect a person, place, or object by staying near them and watching them. **(kill – attack – guard – donate)**

7-To…..is to be brave enough to do something that is risky.

(dare – fear – frighten – die)

8-A/An…..is a mark on skin from a cut or wound.

(weapon – sword – inn – scar)

9-A/An……is a steep piece of land or rock.

(scar – cliff – stone – desert)

10-A/An……..is a weapon with a long, sharp blade.

(gun – mark – sword – harpoon)

11-When I got on the metro, it was too late for me to find a seat as some boys hurried and…….all the empty seats.

(burgled – stole – rubbed – grabbed)

12-Although he looks smart, he has a….across his forehead from a knife.

(scar – scarce – scared – scare)

13-I saw him….at me and telling them what I had said.

(pointing – circling – shooting – fronting)

14-Yesterday I was late, so I …..my bag and went out.

(cleaned – collected – grabbed – painted)

15-After he knew that he failed the exams, his face looked…….

(pale – happy – distinguished – flourished)

16-Aya always helps her….sister to go to school as she can't see.

(deaf – dumb – senseless – blind)

3- Translate

1- Our national heritage is a priceless wealth but there are people who destroy it . unaware of its importance

……………………………………………………………………………………………………

……………………………………………………………………………………………………

2- There is a continuous conflict between man and nature in which man sometimes triumphs but some other times the nature seems merciless.

……………………………………………………………………………………………………

……………………………………………………………………………………………………

3- Road accidents cause a lot of fatal loses in both lives and money yearly and the government is asleep

……………………………………………………………………………………………………

……………………………………………………………………………………………………

4-We can't ignore the fact that education in our country needs an urgent rescue operation. The reform of education is a must even if we spend billions of money on it.

Unit (2) Supporting the community
دعـــــــــم المجـــتمع

support	يؤيد – يساند- مساندة	cancer	السرطان	benefits	فوائد
community	مجتمع	desire	رغبة	check	يفحص
footballer	لاعب كرة	chance	فرصة	find out	يكتشف
admire	يعجب بـ	succeed	ينجح	save	يوفر - ينقذ
Admired	معجب به	empathy	تعاطف	Check up	فحص طبى
intelligence	ذكاء	success	النجاح	inspire	يلهم
ability	قدرة	a role model	قدوة	well known	مشهور
score	يسجل	model	ملكان موضة	biology	علم الأحياء
a goal	هدف	nickname	لقب	respect	يحترم
world cup	كأس العالم	happiness	السعادة	serious	جاد
finals	نهائيات	take part in	يشارك في	wish	أمنية
praise	يمدح	blood	دم	hurt	يؤذي
kind	طيب	pressure	ضغط	reduce	يخفض
generous	كريم	injured	مصاب	name	يسمي
donation	تبرع	transplant	ينقل – يزرع عضو	partner	زميل
donate	يتبرع	regular	منتظم	conservation	حفظ
donor	متبرع	illness	مرض	player	لاعب
charity	جمعية خيرية	witness	يشهد/ شاهد	pilot	طيار
hometown	مسقط رأسه	long term	مدى طويل	recognize	يتعرف
organization	منظمة	villager	قروي	livestock	مواشي
attack	يهاجم	worry	يقلق - قلق	cattle	ماشية
responsibility	مسئولية	biologist	عالم بيولوجي	employ	يوظف
look after	يعتني بـ	sense	يحس - حاسة	encourage	يشجع
achieve	ينجز	research	بحث	graduate	يتخرج
degree	درجة	found	يؤسس	relationship	علاقة
scientist	عالم	all over	كل أنحاء	area	منطقة
stadium	استاد	amazing	مذهل	killing	قتل
presenter	مقدم	guardian	وصي/حارس/ حامى	missing	مفقود
viewer	مشاهد	based in	مقره في	monitor	يرصد
friendly	ودود	based on	قائم علي	track	يتعقب
bored	متضايق	nearby	قريب	hunt	يصيد
movement	حركة	local	محلي	grow up	يكبر
kids	أطفال	protect	يحمي	hero	بطل
volunteer	يتطوع	achievement	انجاز	neglect	يهمل

Definitions

community	مجتمع	All the people who live in the same area, city etc.
guardian	حارس -وصي	someone who is legally, responsible for looking after someone or something.
livestock	حيوانات	animals such as cows and sheep that are kept on a

	المزارع	farm.
monitor	يرصد-يراقب	to watch carefully and check a situation in order to see how it changes or progress over.
persuade	يقنع	to make someone decide to do something, especially by giving them reasons.
prestige	نفوذ- مكانة	the respect and admiration that someone or something gets because of their success or important position in society.
admire	يعجب بـ	to respect and like someone because they have done something that you think is good.
blood pressure	ضغط الدم	the force with which blood travels through your body.
desire	رغبة	a strong hope or wish
donate	يتبرع بـ	to give something, especially money, to a person or an organization in order to help them.
generous	كريم	willing to give money, spend time etc, in order to help people.
intelligence	ذكاء	the ability to learn, understand, and think about things.
iron level	مستوى الحديد	the amount or degree of something, compared to another amount or degree
long-term	المدى الطويل	continuing for a long period of time.
role model	قدوة	someone whose behaviour, attitudes etc. people try to copy because they admire them
transplant	نقل الاعضاء	the operation of transplanting an organ, piece of skin etc

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

word		synonyms		antonyms	
admire	يعجب	adore	يعشق	criticize	ينتقد
amazing	مدهش	surprising	مدهش	ordinary	عادي
employ	يوظف	hire- take on	يوظف	dismiss	يطرد
famous	مشهور	celebrated	مشهور	unknown	مغمور
generous	كريم	lavish- open-handed	سخي	miserly	بخيل
honour	يكرم	esteem	يقدر	insult	يهين
missing	مفقود	lost	مفقود	present	موجود
praise	يمدح	respect- glorify	يحترم – يمجد	criticize	ينتقد
prestige	هيبه	dignity	كرامه	unimportance	خزي
reduce	يقلل	decrease	يقلل	increase	يزداد
support	يدعم	assist	يساعد	abandon	يتخلي عن

Synonyms

search for	يبحث عن	look for

monitor	يراقب	watch / observe
livestock	الماشيه	cattle
donate	يتبرع	give
conservation	محافظ	preservation
dangerous	خطير	serious

Antonyms

wild	بري	tame / domestic	اليف
regular	معتاد	irregular	غير مألوف
intelligence	ذكاء	stupidity	غباء
donate	يتبرع	receive	يستلم

1-admire to disapprove is as …….to mean.
a-generosity b-generous c-miser

2-He looks after the livestock. Livestock means…….
a-wish b-people c-cattle

3-He desired to kill her. The synonyms of desired.
a-gave b-wished c-hated

4-She searched for her wallet, search for means……….
a-look out b-look for c-look up

5-He monitored the iron level, the word monitored can be replaced by……………
a-watched b-tracked c-a&b

6-To give the antonyms of regular we add …………
a-dis b-in c-ir

Expressions and Phrases

Cancer hospital	مستشفي السرطان	health problems	مشاكل صحية
along with	بالإضافة إلي	protect … from	يحمي من
a role model	قدوة - نموذج	go missing (get lost	مفقود - تائه
blood donor	متبرع بالدم	the aim of the organisation	هدف المنظمة
blood pressure	ضغط الدم	from all over the wo	من كل أنحاء العالم
make friends with	يتصادق مع	sense of responsibilit	إحساس بالمسئولية
iron deficiency	نقص الحديد	over hunting	الصيد الجائر
score a goal	يسجل هدف	world cup finals	نهائيات كاس العالم
find out about	يكتشف عن	take part in / share in	يشارك في
life skills	مهارات حياتيه	check blood pressure	يقيس ضغط الدم
go missing = get lost	يضل الطريق	check the iron level	يقيس نسبه الحديد في الدم
start school / university	يبدأ دراسه في مدرسه ـجامعه	save wild animals	ينقذ الحيوانات البريه
leave school / university	يترك المدرسه – الجامعه	blood donors	المتبرعون بالدم

Collocations

is monitored by	يضبط بواسطه	**make a choice**	يختار
look after	يعتنى ب	cattle farmers	الفلاحين المربين للماشيه
has the ability to	يمتلك القدرة على	**on a holiday**	فى اجازة
is praised for	يمتدح بسبب	**In a friendly way**	بطريقه ودوده

it is called	يسمى	**badly –injured**	مصاب بشده
the aim of	هدف ل	**(be) admired for**	يعجب بهمن أجل
reduce the number of	يقلل عدد	**sent ……to**	يؤهل .... يرسل ل
work with the community	يعمل لصالح المجتمع	**well known for**	معروف جيدا ل
this is only done by	هذا يمكن فقط ان يتم عن طريق	**donate to charity**	يتبرع للاعمال الخيريه
earn money	يكسب رزقه (نقود)	**get a job**	يحصل على وظيفه

Go

go missing	يضل الطريق	**go** swimming	يسبح
go diving	يغوص	**go** for a swim	يسبح

Have

have health **problems**	لديه مشكلات صحيه	**have** benefits	لديه فوائد
have an impact	لديه تأثير	**have** a desire	لديه رغبه
have skills	لديه مهارات	**have** illness	لديه مرض

Give

give a chance	يمنح فرصه	**give** a nickname	يلقب
give blood	يتبرع	**give** a sense of responsibility	يعطي احساس بالمسئوليه
give a title	يلقب	give up	يقلع
give a speech	يلقي حديث	**give** a chance	يعطي فرصه

Make

make friends	يصادق	**Give**/make movements	يقوم بتحركات
make sure	يتأكد	**Make** trouble	يسبب مشكلة

Do

do a job	يؤدي وظيفه	**do** sport	يمارس رياضه
do work	يؤدي عمل	**do** operation	يقوم بعمل عمليه
do research	يقوم بعمل بحث	**do** experiment	يقوم بعمل تجربه

1-He has (made – done) a lot of work.
2-I have my blood pressure (shook- checked) every year.
3-she (did- went) missing in Cairo.
4-Fruits (have – make) a lot of health benefits.
5-He was (taken- given) a title of the magician of the ball.
6-Those problems (did- had) serious impact on the family life.
7-A lot of youth (make- donate) their blood.
8-You must (take- give) up bad habits.

Prepositions

succeed **in**	ينجح في	hear **about**	يعلم عن
take part **in**	يشارك في	worry **about**	يقلق على
be interested **in**	مهتم بـ	be admired **for**	يعجب به لسبب
donate **to**	يتبرع لـ	praise **for**	يمدح بسبب

send …**to**	يبعث- يوصل …. الي	kill….**for**	يقتلززربغرض
ability **to**	القدره علي	famous **for**	مشهور بـ
desire **to** + inf	الرغبه 6ي- يرغب في	search **for**	يبحث عن
a role model **to**	قدوة لـ	do research **into**	يقوم بعمل بحث عن
bring…..**into**	يجلب...الي	protect…..**from**	يحمي من
think **of**	يفكر في شخص- يتذكر	be based **in**+مكان	مقره في – يتواجد في
one **of** + اسم جمع	احد- احدي	find out (**about**)	يكتشف – يعلم(عن)
benefit **of**	فائده الـ	around the **world**	في كل انحاء العالم
benefit **from**	يستفيد من	be angry **with**	غاضب من
inspire+شخصto+inf	يلهم شخصا بـ	be bored **with**	ضجر من (يشعر بملل نحو)
important to- **for**	مهم لـ	in a very friendly **way**	بطريقه وديه
encourage…to+**inf**	يشجع ...علي-لكي	work **with**	يعمل مع- يتعامل مع

Complete with a preposition:

1-U.S.A is based ……….the united states of America.
2-I can't deal …………him a lot.
3-The nurse look………..the patient.
4-I know a lot ……………..America.
5-Mohammed Salah plays……………Liverpool.
6-They praised him…………his courage.

Take ,took taken

take care of	يعتني ب	**take** off	يخلع ملابسه/ تقلع الطائره
take turns	يتبادل الادوار	**take** after	يشبه
take place	يحدث	**take** to	يعتاد على / يميل الي
take in	يمتص/ يفهم/ يخدع	**take** out	يخرج
take part in	يشارك في	**Take** over	يتولي مسئولية

take part in = participate in يشارك في take place =happen- occur يحدث

The students should take part in conversations
The coronation took place as it was planned

Language notes

Be based in	**له مقر في**
Be based on	**له مقر علي**
Be based on	**قائم علي – يشير الي**

- -the USA is based (in- **on**) the united states of America.
- -His family is based (**in**- on) Cairo.

transplant	نقل او زراعه اعضاء	**transplant**	ينقل- يزرع عضو
transplant	ينقل نباتات		

support	يدعم - يساند	support	دعم - مسانده
supporter	مساند		

track	**يطارد يلاحق**	**track**	**طريق**
track	**يتابع - يرصد**	**track**	**تراك الملعب- السباق**

party	حزب- فوج- مجموعه	party	حفل

-The police are (transplanting- **tracking**) some criminals.
-He was a member in the national (wedding- **party**).

field	حقل	**field**	مجال
field	ارض الملعب	**take the field**	يدخل الملعب
on – off the field	داخل- خارج الملعب	**go into the field**	يدخل الملعب
field	الواقع العلمي		

-Egypt has achieved a lot in the field of science.

admire	يعجب بـ	**admirer**	معجب
admire.....for	يعجب بـــ..لـــ	**admiration (for)**	اعجاب
admire	ينظر باعجاب		

-I (**admire**- admire with) Shakespeare very much.
-He is one of her (admires- **admirers**).
-He gave her a present as a sign of (admire- **admiration**)

Blood

bloodless	منعدم الدم	**blood vessels**	صفائح الدمويه
blood veins	اوردة الدم	**blood transplant**	نقل الدم
blood donation	التبرع بالدم	**blood transfusion**	نقل الدم
blood donor	متبرع بالدم	**blood pressure**	ضغط الدم
blood group	فصيلة الدم	**blood pulse**	نبض الدم
blood stream	مجرى الدم	**Blood cells**	كرات الدم

1) -We can measure blood (**pulse** – **stream**).
2) -Really he is in need of blood (veins- **transplant**)
3) -What's your blood (team- **group**) Mine is B+.
4) -We need a blood (pluse- **donor**) the sick man is in need of blood.

Community - society

Community مجتمع صغير- جاليه – جماعه صغيره – طائفه
Society مجتمع كبير

-The Egyptian (community- **society**) may need more support to live happily.
-The Egyptian (**community**- society) in America needs more support.

religious community	طائفه دينيه	**local community**	مجتمع محلي
international community	مجتمع دولي	**care community**	رعايه اجتماعيه

Donate

donate	يتبرع ب	**donor**	متبرع
donation	تبرع	**give- make donation**	يتبرع
generous donation	تبرع هائل	**charitable donation**	تبرع خيري
anonymous donation	تبرع من مجهول		

1) -Some (donate- **donors**) are unknown to us.
2) -The school repairs are based on (donate- **donations**)
3) -The hospital got a (donate- **donation**)from a businessman.

admire for	يعجب بـ	**admire**	معجب بــ
admiration	اعجاب	**admirer = fan**	معجب
donate	يتبرع	**donor**	متبرع
donation	تبرع		
empathy	تعاطف	**empathic (with)**	متعاطف
generous	كريم	**generosity**	كرم
hunt	يصطاد- يتعقب – يطارد	**hunter**	صياد
intelligent	ذكي	**intelligence**	ذكاء

1-I (admire- admirer- admiration) his style of writing.
2-He showed his (admire- admired- admiration) for her beauty.
3-He has a lot of (empathy – empathic) with the poor.
4-Mo Salah made a (donor- donation) to a hospital.
4-I want to (donate- donor – donation) to a charity.
5-He is always (generosity- generous) with people.

Don't get confused

every day	كل يوم في بدايه او نهايه الجملة	**everyday**	يومي قبل الاسم
angel	ملاك	**angle**	زاويه
hear of / about	يعرف عن – يسمع عن	**hear from**	يتلقي رسائل – اتصال
a charity	جمعيه خيريه	**charity**	احسان – بر
biography	سيره ذاتيه يكتبها شخص عن اخر	**autobiography**	سيره ذاتيه يكتبها شخص عن نفسة
community	مجتمع صغير	**society**	مجتمع كبير

1-I have heard……….my friend who is abroad, he sent message.
a-of **b-from** **c-about**
2-he is a member in …………………………..
a-charity **b- a charity** **c-charitable**
3-…………………means a life story written by the same person.
a-novel **b-biography** **c-autobiography**
4-We must discuss the matter from different……………..
a-angles **b-angry** **c-angels**
5-He plays football……………………….
a-everyday **b-every day** **c-day**

Instead / instead of

Instead of + ing / noun بدلا من
-I had meat instead of chicken (having chicken)
Instead + فى بداية او نهايه الجملة2
-He didn't go to school instead, he went to the cinema with his bad friends.
1-Nahed couldn't go to the meeting , so I went to the meeting………….
a-instead **b-neither** **c-neither of** **d-instead of**
2-It is advisable that we stay at home………….going to the movie.
a-instead **b-neither** **c-neither of** **d-instead of**

9-inspire …… يلهم * **aspire…… يطمح** * **conspire…… يتآمر**

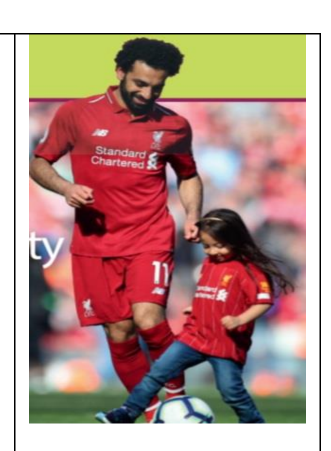
A good teacher must inspire his students and encourage them

10 – famous…. for ….. مشهور بـــــ * famous ….. in …. مشهور في * famous ….as ..مشهور كـــ

He is famous for his honesty. **He became famous in Egypt.**

11-Nickname اسم دلع/شهرة **pen name** اسم مستعار(كاتب) **surname** اسم العائلة

Mohamed Salah

Mohamed Salah is one of Egypt's most famous footballers. He is admired for his intelligence and ability to score goals. In 2017, he scored the goal to send Egypt to their first World Cup finals since 1990. Salah has been praised for his kind and generous donations to charity in Egypt. He donated money to his hometown of Nagrig to build a school, and he has helped a children's cancer hospital in Cairo. Salah's desire to help others is because he wants to give young people a chance to succeed. He is a role model to millions of Egyptians who gave him the nickname 'The Happiness Maker'.	

Choose the correct answer:

1- Mohamed Salah helps people by …………….

A. building houses **B. giving money** **C. playing football**

2-People admire Mohamed Salah for his ……………

A. generosity **B. donations** **C. intelligence**

3-The synonym of the word (famous) is …………..

A. well known **B. unknown** **C. nameless**

Answer the following questions:

4- What do people around the world think of Salah?

5- What has Salah helped to build in Nagrig?

6-Why is Salah sometimes called 'The Happiness Maker'?

Read the following passage then answer the questions:

Blood donors

Every year on 14th June, countries around the world take part in World Blood Donor Day. Why should people donate blood? Donating blood can help people if they have been badly injured or need regular blood transplants because they have a long-term illness. Giving blood can also have health benefits. All donors have their blood pressure and iron levels checked before donation, so people who donate blood can find out quickly if they have any health problems. Giving blood can save lives and it is easy to do!	

Choose the correct answer:

1- People should give blood because…………..

A. it helps injured people. **B. it reduces health benefits.**

C. it is not easy to do.

2- World Blood Donor Day is on....................

A. 13th June. **B. 14th June.** **C. 24th June.**

Answer the following questions:

3-Pick out words from the passage which means:

A. **Participate** .... B. **give something** ....

4- What happens on 14th June each year?

....

5- Why should people donate blood?

....

6- Name one benefit of giving blood.

....

Lesson 2 Listening Text *Audio script*

Interviewer: In today's programme, we're talking to Martin Drake about Dr Leelah Hazzah, an Egyptian conservation biologist and founder of Lion Guardians, a conservation project in Kenya. Martin, when did Leelah become interested in lions?

Martin: Well, as a child, her father told her stories about how he listened to lions roaring at night when he was sleeping on the roof of their house during the summer. But when he explained that there weren't any lions left in Egypt, she decided that when she grew up, she would find out how to save them in other countries.

Interviewer: What happened next?

Martin: She went to America to study conservation biology and then moved to Kenya to research lions amongst the Maasai people. It was there that she saw how quickly lions were disappearing. Did you know that sixty or so years ago there were about 200,000 lions in Africa, but that number is under 20,000 now?

Interviewer: So why are lions disappearing so quickly?

Martin: There are several reasons. people have built houses in the areas that lions traditionally hunt, so they can't find enough food to eat and, so they attack the villager's livestock, you know, their cows and goats. The villagers get angry with the lions and kill them in order to protect their animals. Another reason is prestige – in Maasai culture, young men get a lot of respect from killing a lion. They are even given a lion name which shows that they are no longer a boy, but a man.



Interviewer: *What did Leelah do?*

Martin: *She lived with the Maasai for a year and listened to their views about lions. She learnt that they have a love-hate relationship with lions, they admire their beauty, but hate them for eating their cattle. She also understood the prestige that came from being a lion killer and realised that she needed to persuade the young men that keeping livestock and having a job gave them more prestige than killing a lion, so she started to teach them about the advantages of protecting lions instead.*

Interviewer: *Is that when she started Lion Guardians?*

Martin: *Yes. Lion Guardians is an organisation that employs local people to look for lions in order to protect them. Remember, these young men already have the skills needed to track lions in the wild, so they are taught to become lion guardians rather than lion killers. The organisation gives them a job and teaches them to read and write, so they can help conservations with their research.*





Interviewer: *How successful is the programme?*

Martin: *Very successful. Maasai men now have jobs, a regular income and a sense of purpose. They get to know the lions they are protecting and even give them names and talk about them with fondness.*

Interviewer: *And finally, what can other conservationists learn from Lion Guardians?*

Martin: *The importance of listening to people in the community and to recognise how much knowledge local people have. By working together, both the locals and conservations can benefit.*

Interviewer: *Thank you, Martin. And at 8 o'clock tonight you can see a*

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1- -Mohammed Salah is one of Egypt's most famous.…………………

a – scientists   b – footballers   c – actors   d– singers

2- Salah is----------------------- for his intelligence.

a – invented   b – discovered   c – admired   d– invited

3- What makes Salah distinguished is his ------------------ to score goals

a – able   b – disability   c – capable   d – ability

4- He ------------------ a decisive حاسم goal to send Egypt to the World Cup finals.

a – registered   b – put   c – scored   d – achieved

5- Being -------------- is one of the most qualities of a footballer.

a – funny   b – lazy   c – beautiful   d – intelligent

6- My father is ------------------ . He always invites a lot of guests to have lunch.
a – miserly **b – generosity** **c – generous** **d – stinging**
7- The good footballer should work --------------------- his teammates.
a – on **b – to** **c – with** **d – about**
8- Resala is an Egyptian ---------------------- which helps the poor.
a – school **b – pharmacy** **c – hospital** **d – charity**
9- Some boys adore football,------------ boys are keen on handball.
a – others **b – other** **c – another** **d – one**
10- Thanks -------------- modern inventions we lead a happy life.
a – to **b – for** **c – about** **d – on**
11- A blood ---------------is someone who gives his blood to the injured.
a – earner **b – donor** **c – accountant** **d – expert**
12- People all -------------------- -the world like football.
a – over **b – upon** **c – after** **d – directions**
13- The place where you were born and grew is called your ---------------------
a – downtown **b – city centre** **c – town hall** **d – hometown**
14- We can ----------------- the match easily if our players are fit.
a – win **b – earn** **c – gain** **d – beat**
15- We should -------------------- people who make great achievements.
a – tease **b – criticise** **c – praise** **d – baize**
16- ………………players are paid much money.
a – junior **b – professional** **c – amateur** **d – old**
17- ……………….is a fatal disease as it is incurable.
a – Cancer **b – Colic** **c – diarrhea** **d – Sore throat**
18- Our team ----------------------- two goals and won the match.
a – won **b – scored** **c – played** **d – beat**
19- I have seen him ------------------------ about the pyramids on TV.
a – talks **b – talking** **c – to talking** **d – to talk**
20- You should study hard to ------------------ your goal.
a – win **b – score** **c – achieve** **d - beat**
21- My father has influenced me a lot. I do just like him. He is my ------------------ model
a) rule **b) roll** **c) roller** **d) role**
22- Wealthy people should ---------------------- money to rebuild our country.
a) take **b) save** **c) donate** **d) generous**
23- No one can deny the -------------------- which the various charities play in our country.
a) role **b) rule** **c) pole** **d) mule**
24- The World ---------------- is a great football event.
a) Medal **b) project** **c) Cup** **d) Mug**
25- I go to hospital to measure my blood.----------------------
a) pressure **b) donor** **c) quantity** **d) amount**
26- Dr El-Baz worked ------------------ many projects.
a) at **b) with** **c) of** **d) on**
27- I have a strong --------------------- to be one of the toppers this year.
a) headache **b) disease** **c) desire** **d) dessert**
28- Footballers are now .... not amateurs. Football is their job.
a) professionals **b) craftsmen** **c) artists** **d) actors**
29- Mohammed Salah wants to give young people a ------------------- to succeed
a) money **b) chance** **c) cup** **d) champion**
30- Zeinab Oteify is a famous weight lifting.-------------------
a) tennis **b) footballer** **c) singer** **d) athlete**

31- -Children take -----------------in junior championships.
a) turns b) part c) place d) photos
32- The " Plateau " " El-Hadaba " is a ---------------------- given to Amr Diab.
a) nickname b) pen name c) false name d) fake name
33- The Nile plays a ---------------- part in the lives of the Egyptians.
a) small b) minor c). major d) tiny
34- Happiness is the synonym of the word. -------------------------
a) sadness b) grief c) sorrow d) delight
35- Can you -------------------- photographs with this modern camera؟
a) give b) take c) make d) paint
36- Egypt-------------------- the Cup of African Nations in 2006 .2008 and 2010.
a) scored b) won c) gave d) bought
37- My father …………… a serious operation last week and he is feeling well now.
a) did b) made c) had d) gave
38- Dr Samira Musa was a nuclear scientist……………………
a) research b) researcher c) researching d) searcher
39- …………………wonderful this villa is!
a) How b) What c) Why d) Whatever
40- The ambulance took the people who were badly ---------------- to the nearest hospital.
a) rewarded b) injured c) influenced d) enjoyed
41- My friend needs regular blood ---------------------- because of his long term illness
a) transfusion b) transport c) transmit d) transfer
42- Do you think giving blood has health. -------------------
a) benefits b) useful c) good d) kindness
43- All donors have their blood pressure and ----------- levels checked.
a) steel b) copper c) iron d) silver
44- Diabetes is considered one of the --------------------- term diseases
a) short b) along c) long d) belong
45- Blood donors can find -------------- quickly if they have health problems
a) on b) out c) about d) for
46- Leela's father told her stories about lions. This ------------------- her to study biology.
a) conspired b) despair c) inspired d) aspired
47- Villagers are angry ------------- the lions as they kill their cows and goats.
a) with b) of c) from d) about
48- I haven't met my classmate for many years . I wish I could ------------------- him.
a) know b) recognize c) apologize d) despise
49- Leela Hazzah works with the Lion ------------- who cares for lions
a) Players b) Hunting c) Guardians d) Documents
50- What other ------------------- programme do you know about؟
a) conversation b) conservation c) perception d) preservation
51- I am --------------- ,all my friends are away on holiday and I am stuck at home.
a) boring b) boredom c) bored d) bore
52- They aim to reduce the number of lion -------------- in the area
a) death b) savings c) dying d) killings
53- Cattle are important to the villagers but they often go ------------- or attacked by lions.
a) lost b) missed c) missing d) losing
54- The new factory in our area will ----------------- a lot of university graduates.
a) work b) employ c) occupy d) supply
55- Maasai men are chosen to become -------------- as they understand lions.
a) guardians b) goalkeepers c) hunters d) group.

56- They have the skills needed to ---------------------- lions' movements
a) moment b) memory c) monitor d) minor
57- Guardians also take part in reducing the number of ------------- who kill lions for sport.
a) hunting b) hunt c) humour d) hunters
58- Lions are ------------- every day and the information is sent to the cattle farmers.
a) tracked b) tackled c) ticked d) stuck
59- ……………… is in the photo? – Mohammed Salah.
a)Where b) Whose c) Who's d) Who
60- How do you think Mohammed Salah helps people in his local ………………….?
a) communism b) socialism c) social d) community

Fill in the gaps with word(s):

1	I get up at seven o'clock. I ……….leave for school until I ……. My breakfast. I ……………….hard at school. During the break, I am used to…………….with my friends.
2	Yesterday, two of my friends and I went to the club. We met some………………friends there. We all………..a nice time. We played ……….football match. ……………match was very exciting.
3	I have an ideal friend. I knew him four years……….. He ………. used to working hard. He ………put off his work to the following day. He always…………exercises, so he is healthy and fit.
4	Yesterday, I was the last one………….enter the classroom, but fortunately, the teacher wasn't ……….. He came after about half an hour and he…………..very annoyed. When we………him why he was angry, he said that his car was stolen.
5	Sport plays a big role in children's physical and mental development. It teaches children how............work as a team and co-operate with others. However, children……....perform less ....their classmates ....likely to feel too little in comparison to their more gifted classmates.

Translate into Arabic:

1-An organization helps people to protect their livestock and reduce the number of lion killings.

…………………………………………………………………………………………

…………………………………………………………………………………………

2-I have enjoyed reading the story of "Treasure Island" for the first time.

…………………………………………………………………………………………

…………………………………………………………………………………………

3-Our parents exert great efforts to please us and provide a happy, secure life for us. We really owe much to them.

…………………………………………………………………………………………

…………………………………………………………………………………………

The present simple

1. التكوين Form:

يتكون المضارع البسيط من مصدر الفعل مع مع الضمائر I وyou وwe و they. أما بالنسبة لـ he,she,it نصرف الفعل كالتالي:

1. نضع s في الحالة العادية. (eats - runs - walks – sings)
2. نضع es لو انتهى الفعل بـ x أو o أو sh أو ch أو s أو z . (washes - watches - crosses - goes – mixes)
3. إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف y مسبوق بحرف ساكن تحذف ونضيف ies . (cries – tries)
4. إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف y مسبوق بحرف متحرك (a / e/ i / o/ u) نضيف s فقط (enjoys - plays – prays)

2. الاستخدام Usage:

نستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن:

1. عادات و افعال متكررة habits:

E.g. I often watch television in the evening. Adel usually visits his relatives on Friday.

2. حقائق الثابتة facts:

E.g. The sun rises in the east. The earth goes around the sun.

3. جداول المواعيد الثابتة schedules:

E.g. I am traveling to London tomorrow. My plane leaves at 6 am.

4. المواقف او الافعال التى دائما او عادة حقيقية:

Mohamed Salah gives money to help people in his hometown

3. الكلمات الدالة Key words:

الكلمات التالية كلها كلمات دالة على المضارع البسيط:

(Always دائماً, usually عادةً, often غالباً, sometimes أحياناً, ever دائماً/للأبد, never أبداً, rarely نادراً, scarcely نادراً, seldom نادراً, hardly بالكاد, frequently بصورة متكررة, generally عموماً, every كل, occasionally بين الحين والآخر, from time to time من وقت للآخر)

⌫ **يستخدم المضارع البسيط مع الظروف الزمنية الآتية وتأتى فى نهاية الجملة أو أولها**

every day/ every week / every year/ twice a week / twice a month /

➔Rania goes to the club every Monday. Every Monday Rania goes to the club.

⌫ **يستخدم المضارع البسيط مع ظروف التكرار و تأتى:قبل الفعل الأصلى أو بعد verb to be**

- I sometimes walk to school.
- My brother often watches TV.
- I am never late for school.
- She is always tired in the evenings.

3. النفى Negation:

1- نستخدم (don't) مع (i/ they/ we / you) وبعدها مصدر الفعل

- they don't like pizza.
- I don't play football on Friday.

2- نستخدم (doesn't) مع (he/ she /it) وبعدها مصدر الفعل

He doesn't want a parrot. **- she doesn't want a kitten.**

3-يمكن أن نستخدم **never** للنفى مكان **doesn't** ويأتى بعدها فعل منتهى (s)

Ex :Ahmed doesn't study English = Ahmed never studies English

5. السؤال:

كلمة استفهام+Do + (you/they)+ مصدر + تكملة الجملة ?
كلمة استفهام+Does + (he/she/it/your+ اسم مفرد)+ مصدر + تكملة الجملة ?

√-When do you go to school? -- I go to school at 7 o'clock

√- Where does she live, Sara? -- She lives in America.



Do + (you/they)+ مصدر + تكملة الجملة ?
Does + (he/she/it/your+ اسم مفرد)+ مصدر + تكملة الجملة ?

ex-Do you like fish ? yes, I do /No, I don't
➔Do they play tennis?. yes, they do, No they don't

عند السؤال عن عدد المرات نستخدم

How often+ Does/do +(فاعل)+ مصدر + تكملة الجملة ?

أجابة ب(always–usually- never- every week–once – twice – three times)
How often do you go to the library ? I go to library twice a week .

6. المبنى للمجهول Passive:

مفعول + is/are + p.p

➔Football is played around the world.

The past simple tense الماضى البسيط

التكوين 1-Form

📖 يتكون الماضى البسيط من (التصريف الثانى للفعل) بإضافة d/أو ed او ied للفعل إذا كان فعل عادى (منتظم) مثل Play – played / help – helped

📖 أما إذا كان فعل شاذ (غير منتظم) يُحفظ مثل see - saw / go - went / have – had.

لاحـــظ : متى نضيف (ied / ed /d) للفعل المنتظم

(1) اذا كان الفعل ينتهى بحرف (e) نضـع له (d)

like → liked live → lived arrive → arrived

(2)إذا كان الفعل ينتهى بحرف (y) مسبوقاً بحرف ساكن ، نحذف(y) ونضع (ied)

study → studied cry → cried carry → carried

(3)إذا كان الفعل ينتهى بحرف (y) مسبوقاً بحرف متحرك (a – e – i – o – u) نضع(ed)

play → played enjoy → enjoyed stay → stayed

(4)إذا كان الفعل ينتهى بحرف ساكن مسبوقاً بحرف متحرك يُضاعَف الساكن ونضع (ed)

travel → travelled stop → stopped clap → clapped

لكن اذا انتهى ب(x / y / w) وقبلة حرف متحرك لا يتم مضاعفة هذه الحروف . fix → fixed / follow →followed

الاستخدام 2-Usage

نستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن:

1. حدث بدأ وانتهى في الماضي.
E.g. I played football yesterday. I was in Alexandria a month ago.

2. عادة في الماضي (غالباً مع كلمة "used to" والتي معناها " اعتاد أن").
E.g. When I was in Paris, I used to play (played) tennis.
لاحظ: يمكن ان يستخدم مع كلمات المضارع البسيط ليدل على عادة فى الماضى(Always- often- never-usually/every.....)
E.g. When he was a child, he walked to school everyday.
➢I always ate breakfast before I went to school.

3. حكاية قصة.
E.g. Ali found a bag, and then he went to the police station.

4. حالة if الثانية:
If I had enough money, I'd buy this expensive mobile.

5-الاحداث التى حدثت تباعا واحد تلو الاخر فى الماضى ليس هناك فارق زمنى.
E.g. First, he paid the taxi, then he got out of the taxi.
When he had an idea, he wrote a short story.
Yesterday, I went to the club and met my friends.

6- ويستخدم الماضي البسيط مع التعبيرات الاتية حالة وجود فاعل

1- I wish + فاعل + ماضى بسيط	➢ I wish Hany studied hard.
2- It's (high)time + فاعل + ماضى بسيط	➢ It's time she studied English.
3- I would rather + فاعل + ماضى بسيط	➢ I'd rather he left now. ➢ I'd rather you didn't hunt elephants

3-Key words الكلمات الدالة

Yesterday امس / (مدة زمنية)**ago** منذ / **last**+مدة زمنية الماضى / **in**+ سنة ماضية (**in 2**
in the past فى الماضى/ **once/one day** ذات مرة/ **How long ago = when / The otl**

4. النفى Negative:

فى حالة النفى نستخدم (المصدر + didn't)

فاعل + did not(didn't) + V.(inf) مصدر الفعل

➔ I didn't play football yesterday. ➔ he didn't go to school last week.

لاحظ : هناك اشكال اخرى للافعال فى زمن الماضى التى لايمكن تحول الى النفى باستخدام **didn't** مثل:

was→ wasn't / were→ weren't / could→ couldn't

➲Ali wasn't at the cinema last week. ➲They weren't at school yesterday.
➲ When I was young , I couldn't ride a bike.

5. السؤال Question:

عند تكوين السؤال ب Yes / No نتبع الاتى :

Did subiect + inf.....مصدر الفعل?

➔Did you watch TV last night? Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.

عند تكوين السؤال ب اداة استفهام :

اداة الاستفهام + did + subiect + inf.....مصدر الفعل?

➔What time did you go to bed? Why did he buy that shirt?
➔ where did you go yesterday? I went to the club

6. المبنى للمجهول Passive:

مفعول + was/were + p.p

➔Football was played yesterday. ➔ The film was watched at home by Heba

Choose the correct answer: practice

1-Lions............meat.
(eats – eat – don't eat – doesn't eat)
2-My father......in a big company. He is an accountant.
(works – work – is working – is worked)
3-After I .....lunch, I will take a rest.
(will have – had – had had – have)
4-She will help me as soon as she.....her work.
(will finish – finish – finishes – finished)
5-According to the timetable, the train....the station at seven.
(will reach – reach –reaches – had reached)

6-Ali works as a doctor. He.......very busy.
(often is – is often –often has – has often)
7-Mona......something to do. She is very busy.
(always have – have always – always has –has always)
8-Sama is used ......in Aswan.
(to life – to live – living – lives)
9-It is my habit.......for walks on Fridays.
(going – go – to go – to going)
10-Fady......working on the farm.
(is used – used to – is used to – used)
11-My sister usually......the 8 o'clock train to work.
(has caught – catch – catches – catching)
12-Mr Omar......come to work late.
(never – doesn't – don't – isn't)
13-He..............very quickly, so we didn't understand him.
(speaks – spoke – was spoken – speaking)
14-He...............very quickly, so we don't understand him.
(speaks – spoke – was spoken – speaking)
15-My friends came to my birthday and....me presents.
(give – gives – gave – were giving)

تدريبات علي القواعد Exercises on grammar

1--choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d

1 Mohamed Salah.............................. football in Liverpool.
a. play b. playing c. plays d. is played
2 In 2017 my parents .... to Luxor.
a. are moving b. will move c. move d. moved
3 How often do you................. fruit and vegetables?
a. eat b. ate c. eating d.to eat
4 Hala is going to be a scientist when she.............................. school.
a. leave b. leaving c. leaves d. left
5 There........................... thousands of people at the football stadium.
a. be b. are c. is d. was
6 The TV presenter............................... to her viewers in a very friendly way
a. are talking b. talk c. talked d. talking
7-Your cousin ....at the community centre last summer
a. is helping b. helped c. helps d. help
8-The young men.................... to be field biologist
a. are taught b. taught c. teach d. are teaching

9-The community............. to look after the lions
a. encourages b. encourage c. is encouraged d. encouraged
10-Lions.....................as much as in the past.
a. don't kill b. aren't killed c. isn't killed d. doesn't killed
11) I ....so tired last night.
a. am b. had c. is d. was
12) I ....asleep at half past eight yesterday.
a. fall b. fell c. felt d. failed
13- Money.....................into the area by the tourists
a. brought b. brings c. are brought d. is brought
14) Omar.............. . That's why he is always fit.
a.smoke b. don't smokes c. doesn't smokes d. never smokes
15) When I was eight, I.....programme about a famous Egyptian doctor on TV.
a. saw b. see c. am seeing d. seen
16) We are making a card for my brother. ....to help?
a. Are you wanting b. Did you want c. Do you want d. Have you wanted
17) My sister ....working with children.
a. enjoying b. enjoy c. is enjoying d. enjoys
18) After my father ....his work, he will take us to the club.
a. finishing b. finish c. finishes d. had finished
19) ....you understand what the teacher says?
a. Did b. Do c. Are d. Does
20)Ali always........to work when he was young.
a-walked b-walks c-is walking d-was walking
21Karim ....at the school two years ago.
a. start b. starting c. started d. is starting
22) I ....my new camera last week.
a. buys b. am buying c. bought d. buy
23) My father ....in a bank in the city centre.
a. works b. worked c. am working d. work
24-I would rather you --------------- football with us.
a. play b. played c. plays d. playing
25-Local people...................jobs by the organization.
a. are giving b. are given c. is given d. given
26 - Mona...........................at school yesterday as she was absent.
a. didn’t see b. doesn't see c. wasn’t seen d. isn’t seen
27. The last time I .... my cousin was in 2015.
a. have met b. meet c. met d. was met
28. I .... for five hours every day last week.
a. work b. have worked c. working d. worked
29. A terrible accident .... in our street yesterday.
a. happen b. happens c. happened d. happening
30. Children often .... their parents and grandparents to do things.
a. helping b. helped c. helps d. help
31. He got into the car and .... down the road.

a. drive b. drove c. drives d. driving

32. He often .... on radio and television.

a. is speaking b. spoken c. has spoken d. speaks

33-Surgeons .... usually see small things by the naked eye

a. didn't b. aren't c. doesn't d. don't

34. When I was young, I used to .... to the park every weekend.

a. going b. gone c. go d. goes

35. When I was young, I .... ride a bike.

a. am used to b. was used to c. used d. used to

36. Two million years ago, very heavy rain .... in the Western Desert.

a. falls b. has fallen c. fell d. fallen

37. Not many girls .... to school in the early 20th century.

a. have gone b. went c. are going d. go

38. A terrible accident .... in our street yesterday.

a. happen b. happens c. happened d. happening

39. Children often .... their parents and grandparents to do things.

a. helping b. helped c. helps d. help

40. Our train .... at 7.15 yesterday morning.

a. left b. leaving c. leave d. leaves

41. We knocked on the door, but nobody ....

a. comes b. come c. coming d. came

42. I .... for five hours every day last week.

a. have worked b. working c. work d. worked

43. When I went on holiday, I always .... a lot of photographs.

a. was taking b. take c. took d. taking

44. When my brother was young, he............ football every day.

a. played b. plays c. is playing d. was playing

45. My football team .... their match last weekend.

a. has won b. have won c. win d. won

46. Last year, my friends and I .... an exciting holiday.

a. have had b. have c. will have d. had

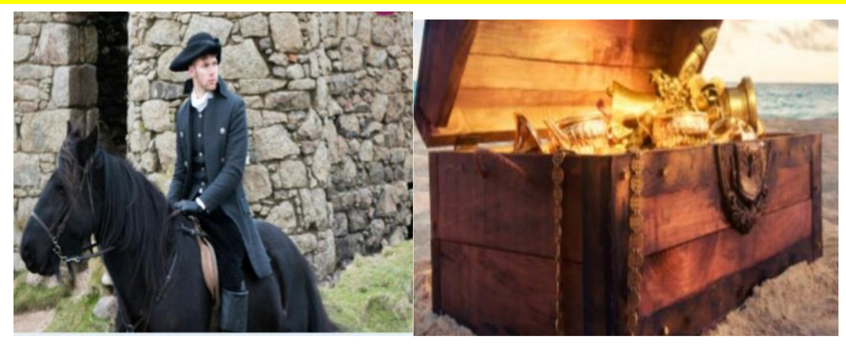
49. Crowded cities often .... air pollution .

a. has b. have c. are d. were

50. The Pharaohs .... Egypt for thousands of years.

a. have ruled b. rule c. ruled d. ruling

Unit 2 Lesson 5 Treasure Island Chapter 2



I could see the road from where we were hiding, and soon I saw eight men. One of them was the blind man. I saw them walk down the road to the Admiral Benbow Inn. They were surprised to see that the door was open, then they all ran inside. I heard someone shout, "Bill's dead!"

كان بإمكاني رؤية الطريق من حيث كنا نختبئ، وسرعان ما رأيت ثمانية رجال. كان احدهم الرجل الأعمى. رأيتهم يسيرون على الطريق المؤدي إلى نزل الأميرال بنبو. فوجئوا برؤية الباب مفتوحًا ، ثم جروا جميعًا إلى الداخل. سمعت أحدهم يصرخ ، " بيل مات!"

"Go and find his box," said the blind man. A little later, a window opened from the Captain's bedroom and a man called out, "Someone has opened the box!" "Is it there?" said the blind man. "Only the money is there," replied the man.

"اذهبوا وابحثوا عن صندوقه" ، قال الرجل الأعمى.
بعد ذلك بقليل ، فتح نافذة من غرفة نوم الكابتن ونادى رجل، "شخص ما فتح الصندوق!"
"هل هو هناك؟" قال الرجل الأعمى. أجاب الرجل: " المال فقط هوالموجود."

"It's the boy and the woman from the inn!" shouted the blind man. "Let's find them!" The men started to look around the house. "If you find it you'll all be rich!" said the blind man.

إنه الولد والمرأة من النزل!" صاح الرجل الأعمى. "هيا نجدهم!"
بدأ الرجال في البحث فى ارجاء المنزل. قال الرجل الأعمى: "إذا وجدتوه، فسوف تكون جميعًا اغنياء."

At this time, we heard horses coming down the road. When the men heard the horses, they started to run in all directions.

في هذا الوقت ، سمعنا خيولًا تسير على الطريق. عندما سمع الرجال الخيول ، بدأوا في الجري في كل الاتجاهات.

The horses arrived, so I ran out to see who was riding them. One of them was the boy who went to get Dr Livesy, and the rest were policemen. Two men took my mother to the village, where she soon felt better, and the others tried to catch the men. But it was too late: we heard that they escaped on a boat.

وصلت الخيول ، فجريت لاعرف من كان يقودها. أحدهم كان الصبي الذي ذهب للحصول على الدكتور لايفسي، وكان الباقي من رجال الشرطة. أخذ رجلان والدتي إلى القرية ، وهناك سرعان ما شعرت بتحسن، وحاول الآخرون القبض على الرجال. ولكن بعد فوات الأوان: سمعنا أنهم هربوا على متن قارب.

I returned to the Admiral Benbow with the police.
"What did they want?" said Mr Dance, the head of the police.

عدت إلى الأدميرال بنبو مع الشرطة.

"ماذا كانوا يريدون؟"قال السيد دانس ، رئيس الشرطة.

"I think that they wanted this," I said, showing him the papers that I still had in my jacket. "I'd like to take them to Dr Livesey."

"That's a good idea," said Mr Dance. "He's a magistrate as well as a doctor. He'll know what to do. I'll come with you."

قلت: "أعتقد أنهم أرادوا ذلك" ، وأظهرت له الأوراق التي كانت لا تزال في سترتى. "أود أن آخذهم إلى الدكتور لايفسي."

قال السيد دانس "هذه فكرة جيدة". إنه قاض وكذلك طبيب. سيعرف ماذا يفعل. سآتي معك."

We found that Dr Livesey was not at home, but was eating at the house of Mr Trelawney, an important rich man. Mr Trelawney asked us into his house. I showed Mr Trelawney and Dr Livesey the papers that the Captain had in his box.

وجدنا أن الدكتور لايفسي لم يكن في بيته، ولكنه كان يأكل في منزل السيد تريلاوني ، وهو رجل غنى مهم. طلب السيد تريلاوني منا في منزله. لقد عرضت على السيد تريلاوني والدكتور لايفسي الأوراق التي حملها الكابتن في صندوقه

"I think this might be a clue as to where Flint buried his treasure!" said Dr Livesey.

"That is why those men were not interested in money," agreed Mr Trelawney. "If you are right, we should take the next boat from Bristol and go and find the treasure ourselves!"

"أعتقد أن هذا قد يكون دليلًا على المكان الذي دفن فيه فلينت كنزه!" ، قال الدكتور لايفسي.

"لهذا السبب لم يهتم هؤلاء الرجال بالمال" ، وافقه السيد تريلاوني فى رأيه. "إذا كنت على حق ، يجب أن نأخذ القارب التالي من بريستول ونذهب ونجد الكنز بأنفسنا!"

"If Jim here agrees," said the doctor, looking at me, "we should look at these papers now." The doctor looked at the papers. Some of them seemed to describe the ships that the Captain and his men had robbed of money. Then we looked at the other papers and saw a map of an island, with a big cross on it next to the words, "most of treasure here."

قال الطبيب و هو ينظر إلي: "إذا وافق جيم هنا ، يجب أن ننظر إلى هذه الأوراق الآن."

نظر الطبيب إلى الأوراق. بدا بعضهم يصف السفن التي استولى الكابتن ورجاله على المال التى كان بها. ثم نظرنا إلى الأوراق الأخرى ورأينا خريطة لجزيرة عليها صليب كبير وبجواره جملة "معظم الكنز هنا".

"Dr Livesey, we should go to Bristol tomorrow," said Mr Trelawney. "In a few days, we'll find the best ship in England. Jim Hawkins here can come as our ship's boy. You can be the ship's doctor." "I agree," said the doctor, "but those men who tried to find the map will now be looking for us. We are not safe anymore. We must not tell anyone else what we know."

قال السيد تريلاوني: "دكتور لايفسي ، يجب أن نذهب إلى بريستول غدًا". "في غضون أيام قليلة ، سوف نجد أفضل سفينة في إنجلترا. يمكن أن يأتي جيم هوكينز كفتى لسفينتنا. يمكنك أن تكون طبيب السفينة ".

قال الطبيب "أوافق" ، لكن هؤلاء الرجال الذين حاولوا العثور على الخريطة سيبحثون عنا الآن. نحن لسنا آمنين بعد الآن. يجب ألا نخبر أحداً آخر بما نعرفه ."

It took us longer than we thought to be ready to leave England. While Mr Trelawney prepared for the journey in Bristol, I stayed at Mr Trelawney's house with his servant Redruth and spent hours studying the map, thinking about the treasure that we might find.

استغرقنا وقتًا أطول مما كنا نظن لنستعد لمغادرة إنجلترا. وبينما كان السيد تريلاوني يستعد للرحلة في بريستول ، بقيت في منزل السيد تريلاوني مع خادمه ريدروث وقضيت ساعات في دراسة الخريطة ، أفكر في الكنز الذي قد نجده.

One day, a letter was sent to me from Mr Trelawney. It said that a good man called Blandly had a ship called the Hispaniola for us. Trelawney said that he had found a crew ready to work on it. The crew included a man called Long Adel Silver, who had lost a leg but was a good cook. Silver also knew other men who would join us. Trelawney said that everyone was excited by the thought of the treasure. I was surprised by this, as I thought we had to keep the news of the treasure a secret.

في أحد الأيام ، تم إرسال رسالة إلي من السيد تريلاوني. كان يقول أن رجلاً صالحاً يدعى بلاندلي لديه سفينة اسمها هيسبانيولا لنا. قال تريلاوني إنه وجد طاقمًا جاهزًا للعمل عليها. وكان من بين الطاقم رجل يدعى لونج جون سيلفر ، فقد ساقه ولكنه كان طباخًا جيدًا. عرف سيلفر أيضًا رجالًا آخرين سينضمون إلينا. وقال تريلاوني أن الجميع كان متحمسًا لفكرة الكنز. لقد فوجئت بهذا ، لانى اعتقدت أنه كان علينا ان نبقى خبر الكنز سرا

I was very excited by the thought of the journey and I went to say goodbye to my mother at the Admiral Benbow Inn. I was very sad to leave her the next day, when I travelled to Bristol with Redruth. We had just one night in the city before we were going to sail.

لقد كنت متحمسًا للغاية لفكرة الرحلة وذهبت لأودع أمي في فندق الأميرال بنبو. كنت حزينًا جدًا لتركها في اليوم التالي عندما سافرت إلى بريستول مع ريدروث. قضينا ليلة واحدة فقط في المدينة قبل أن نبحر.

Chapter 2 Vocabulary

agree يوافق X disagree	يرفض	bury	يدفن
anyone else	اي شخص اخر	right (n) (adj)	حق/صحيح
road	طريق	look at	ينظر الى
hide (hid / hidden) يختبئ/يخفى		seem to	يبدو ان
surprised	مندهش	describe	يصف
open (v) (adj)	يفتح/مفتوح	description	وصف
dead ميت death	الموة/حالة وفاة	rob	يسرق
deadly (adj) مميت die	يموت	robber	سارق
call out = shout	يصرخ	map	خريطة
find (found)	يجد	try to	يحاول ان
found (founded)	يؤسس	look for	يبحث عن
rich= wealthy ثري X poor	فقير	Safe أمن safely	بأمان
direction	اتجاه	safety الامان save	يحفظ/ينقذ
catch (caught)	يقبض على	ready to	جاهز / مستعد
escape	يهرب	leave (left)	يغادر / يترك
return	يعود	prepare for	يعد/ يجهز
head	راس / رئيس	think about(thought)	يفكر فى
Show	يعرض / يبين / عرض	thought	فكرة
papers	مستندات / جرائد	include	يتضمن
magistrate	قاضي	cook	يطبخ / طباخ
clue	دليل / مفتاح لحل لغز	crew	طاقم سفينة

secret	سر / سري	journey	رحلة طويلة
servant	خادم	cross	يعبر / علامة
excited	متحمس/منفعل	inside	في داخل
The rest	البقية	as well as	بالاضافة الى

Exercise on Chapter 2

Choose the correct answer:

1-A/An……is the most important person in an organization.
(head – crew – clerk – cleaner)
2-A/An…..is a piece of land surrounded by water.
(beach – island – desert – river)
3-A /A…….is someone whose job is to live in another person's house and do jobs for them such as cleaning and sweeping.
(magistrate – officer – servant – captain)
4-To…………is to steal something from a person, shop etc.
(give – donate – hide – rob)
5-A/An……………are the people who work together on a ship, plane etc.
(crew – staff – team – gang)
6-To…..is to succeed in leaving a place when someone or something is trying to stop you. **(rob – escape – guard – dare)**
7-A/An……is someone who decides if a person is guilty of less serious crimes in a court. **(doctor – sailor – cook – magistrate)**
8-A/An………is an object or piece of information that helps to solve a crime.
(servant – crew – clue – head)
9-…………is a group of valuable things such as gold, silver, jewels etc.
(Treasure – Scar – Adventure – Head)
10-A / An……is the mark (X or +) used on paper, to represent where something is, or where something should be.
(equal – plus – cross – minus)
11-The police found a vital……to the girl's disappearance in an area near her home.
(secret – crew – glue – clue)
12-In the court, the girl told the…..that she stole to get money to pay for her mother's medicines. **(parrot – magistrate – pirate – pharmacist)**
13-The……decided that the man was innocent and set him free.
(pirate – sailor – cook – magistrate)
14-It is the policemen's job to….criminals and send them to prison.
(hold – catch – hand – overlook)
15-Dr Zewail was the……of the team who discovered the femtosecond.
(head – hand – lord – owner)

Unit 3

Improving lives

association	جمعيه	abroad	بالخارج	life	حياة
beliefs	معتقدات	admit	يعترف	master	السيد \ يتقن
community	مجتمع	adult	بالغ	mistake	خطأ
crescent	هلال	against	ضد	note	ملاحظه
culture	ثقافه	area	منطقه	opinion	رأى
debt	دين	brainstorm	يستثير الفكر	opportunity	فرصه
earn	يكسب	break	يتعطل \ اينكسر\يكسر	pay	يدفع
experience	تجربه \ اخبره	brief	مختصر	police	الشرطه
experiences	خبرات	character	شخصيه	realize	يدرك
feed bank	بنك الطعام	collect	يجمع	repair	يصلح
merchant	تاجر	common	عام\مشترك	respect	يحترم
miserable	يائس	crime	جريمه	high school	مدرسه ثانوى
owe	يدين	criminal	مجرم	improve	يحسن \ يطور
plump	ممتلئ قليلا	details	تفاصيل	plan	خطه \ يخطط
prison	سجن	die	يموت	disabled	معاق
stepfather	زوج الام	difference	فرق	dreamer	حالم
structure	تركيب \ ابناء	include	يشمل	educate	يعلم
voluntary	عمل تطوعي	interest	اهتمامات	empty	فارغ\يفرغ
exactly	تماما	successful	ناجح	main	رئيسى
expert	خبير	suggestion	اقتراح	meaning	معنى
explain	يشرح	summary	ملخص	miss	يفقد
extract	اقتباس	tip	نصيحه	novel	روايه
factory	مصنع	tired	يبدو عليه التعب	pass	يجتاز
factual	واقعى	trick	يخدع\خدعه	penny	بنس(مليم)
floor	ارضيه	trust	يثق\ثقه	pound	جنيه
goods	بضائع	twins	توأم	reader	قارئ
hate	يكره	worker	عامل	reply	رد\ يرد
return	يعود	arrange	يرتب	revise	يراجع
review	يراجع \ مراجعه	baby sister	اخت رضيعه	several	عديد
section	قسم	become	يصبح	show	يوضح
situation	موقف	check	يفحص	skill	مهاره
society	مجتمع	die	يموت	spend	ينفق\يقضى
solve	يحل	helpful	مفيد \ معين	surprise	دهش \ يدهش
steps	خطوات	hurt	يؤذى	talk	حديث \ يتحدث
still	مازال	keep	يحافظ \ يحتفظ ب	try	يحاول
group	مجموعه	later	فيما بعد	writer	كاتب

Definitions

community	people who live in a place or in an area and have common interests	مجتمع
culture	the beliefs and traditions of a group of people	ثقافه

debt	money you must give back to someone	دين
earn	money you receive for doing work	يكسب \ يتقاضى
food bank	place where people collect food to give to others	بنك الطعام
merchant	a person who sells and buys a lot of goods	تاجر
miserable	very sad	تعيس \ شقى
owe	have to pay back money or things that belongs to others	يكون مدين
plump	slightly fat in a nice way	مكتنز / ممتلئ قليلا
prison	a place to keep criminals for a period of time as a punishment	سجن
rat	an animal like a big mouse	فأر \جرذ
voluntary work	a job that people do for no money	عمل تطوعى
youth association	a group of young people who do things together	جمعيه شبابيه

Expressions

a **boy of** four	ولد عمره 4سنوات	**key** information	المعلومات الرئيسيه
an idea **for** a short story	فكرة لقصة قصيره	**long** time ago	منذ وقت طويل
at the end of	فى نهايه	**made** him give it back	جعله يعيدها
at this age	فى هذا السن	**make** life worse for	يجعل الحياة اسوأ ل
book **character**	شخصيه فى كتاب	**make** the society better	يجعل المجتمع افضل
change people's opinion about	تغير وجهة نظر الناس فى	**many** times	مرات عديده
continue (**up**) to	يستمر حتى	my job **was** to	كانت وظيفتى هى ان
difference in meaning	فرق فى المعنى	**none** of them	لا احد منهم
disabled children	الاطفال المعاقين	**not**….. any more	لا.......مره اخرى(فيما بعد)
earn enough money	يكسب ما يكفى من المال	people **benefit**	منفعة الناس
find him a good job	يجد له وظيفه جيدة	**Red** Crescent	الهلال الاحمر
for example	على سبيل المثال	**similar** to you	يشبهك
for no money	مجانا	**something goes** wrong	شيئ ما تعطل
for the first time	لاول مره	**spent** three years writing	قضى ثلاث سنوات يكتب
free time	وقت فراغ	**stay** abroad	يبقى خارج البلاد
go travelling	يذهب فى رحله	**details** of the story	تفاصيل القصه
good to hear from you	انه لشيئ جيد ان اتواصل معك	the **poor law**	قانون الفقراء\ القانون السيئ
have nowhere to live	ليس لديه مكان ليعيش فيه	**there** should be	ينبغى ان يكون هناك
health problem	مشكله صحيه	**try** visiting	يحاول زيارة

Antonyms

word	**الكلمة**	**antonym= opposite**	**العكس**
admit	يقر ب/ يعترف ب	deny /conceal	ينكر
against	ضد	with/ for	مع
borrow	يستعير/ يستلف	lend	سلف/ يقرض
common	عام/ مشترك	unusual	غير مألوف /نادر
earn	يكسب/ يجنى مال	lose	يخسر
empty	فارغ	full	مملوء
miserable	تعيس	happy/contented	سعيد / راضى

plump	مكتنز قليلا	thin/slender/skinny	نحيف
voluntary	عمل تطوعى	compulsory/obligatory/ paid	اجبارى / مدفوع الاجر

synonyms

word	الكلمة	synonym = meaning المترادفات
admit	يقر ب/يعترف	confess
common	عام/ مشترك/ شائع	widespread/usual/ordinary/customary
miserable	تعيس /بائس	unhappy
voluntary	عمل تطوعى	unpaid

Language Notes

have

have a child	لديه طفل- يضع طفل	have a problem	لديه مشكله في
have a fortune	لديه ثورة	have time	لديه الوقت
have debts	عليه ديون	have opportunity	ليست لديه فرصه
have a happy ending	له نهايه سعيده	have a suggestion	لديه اقتراح
have common interests	لديهم اهتمامات مشتركه	have a lecture	لديه محاضره
have opportunity	لديه الفرصه	have a meeting	لديه لقاء

Make

make money	يكسب مال	make difference	يحدث اختلاف
make notes	يدون ملاحظات	make noise	يحدث ضوضاء
make a mistake	يرتكب خطأ	make peace	يوفق
make sure	يتأكد	make a promise	يعد

Do

housework	يعمل واجب منزلي	do sport	يمارس رياضه
a job	يقوم بعمل	do an operation	يجري عمليه
things	يقوم بعمل اشياء	do an experiment	يجري تجربه

lose / miss

lose	يخسر /يضيع	lose job	يخسر او يضيع شيئ
lose a book	يخسر مباراه	lose a key	يخسر وظيفه
lose interest	يفقد اهتمام	lose patience	يضيع مفتاح
lose weight	يفقد وزن	lose sight	يفقد الصبر
lose mind	يفقد عقله	lose money	يضيع /يخسر مال
lose to	يخسر امام	lose time	يضيع الوقت

miss	يفقد بمعنى يفوت شيئ	miss a day	يغيب اليوم
miss a bus	يفوته الاتوبيس	miss a lecture	تفوته محاضره
miss a plane	يفوته الطائرة	miss a match	تفوته مشاهده مباراه
miss a train	يفوته القطار	miss someone	يفتقد شخص ما
miss a flight	تفوته الرحله		

go missing= go lost لا ننسى ان نقول

- my bus came late so I (lost –**missed**)the start of the lecture.

- I (missed- **lost**)all my money in business .
- I got up late so I (lost –**missed**) the train.
- She (missed – **lost**) her sight when she was young.
- He (missed-**lost**)his leg in a car accident.
- When she travelled abroad she (lost- **missed**) all her family , she hoped to speak to them all.

Look ينظر

look at	ينظر الى	look up	يبحث عن معنى
look for	يبحث عن	look forward to	يتطلع الى
look like	يشبه	look up to	يوقر /يحترم
look out	يحترس	look into	يفحص

- I couldn't find my pen although I looked………… Everywhere.
- She is so beautiful as she look ….. her mother.
- All of us look …….to the trip.
- I will look ……. The complaint .

life /a life /the life

life	الحياه (عموما)	a life / the life	حياه من نوع معين
a live	على قيد الحياه	lives	حيوات/ ارواح
live	يعيش	live	مباشر

- It's a matter of(life-a life - alive) or death.
- The match will be sent (live – alive)
- He is not dead , he is (a life- alive)

Good

good at	جيد في	**good for**	مفيد ل
good to	رحيم ب/عطوف على	**good with**	جيد في التعامل مع

- He is good ……………English
- You should be good ……………the needy
- He is good ……….numbers

Other /others

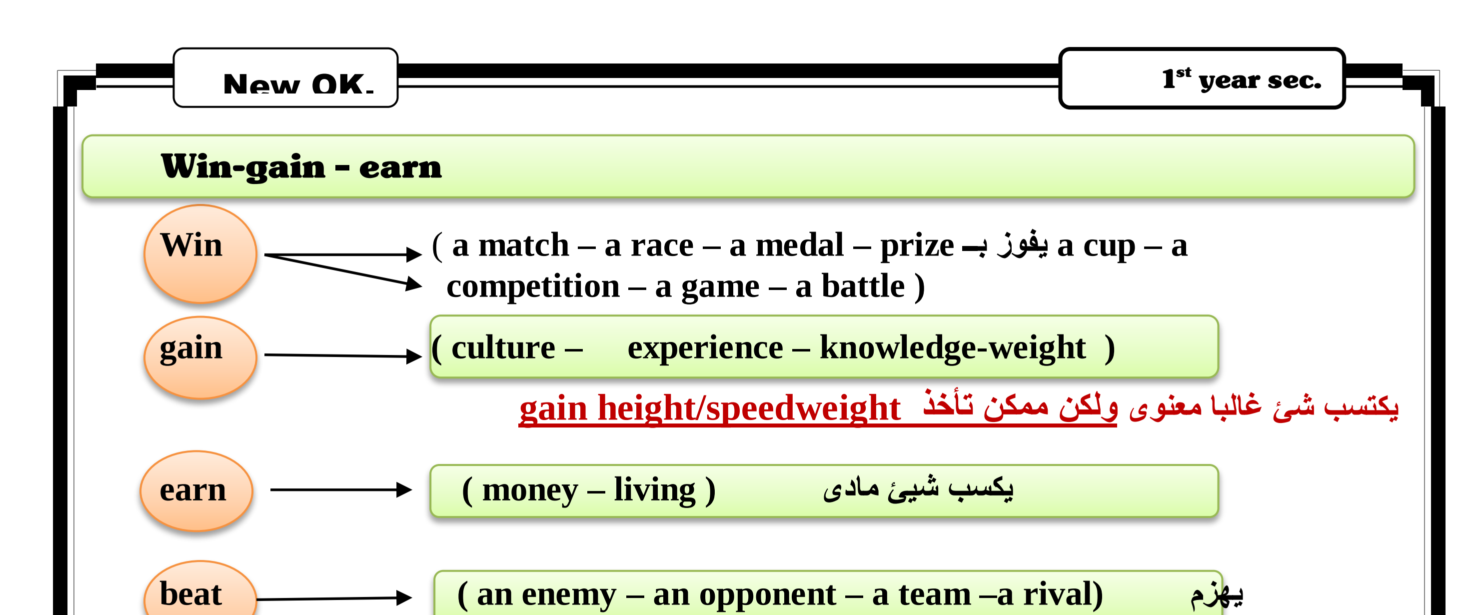
other +اسم جمع يعد ⟶ students- girls – books اخرون
other اسم لا يعد ⟶ Information – news

قد تسبق كلمه other باحدي الكلمات الاتيه :

Any- some – the – many- several
another +اسم مفرد يعد ⟶ cup- book اخر بمعني ثاني او اضافي
another+ رقم ⟶ A few- Two shirts – one

others + فعل   **others** اخر الجمله   اخرون

-some students like English but(other- another- **others**) don't.
-I like meat but(**other**- others) friends like fish.
-I don't like this colour, can you show me (other- others – **another**) one



association

association(n) اتحاد/ منظمه	associate ….. with(v) يربط بين …. و….
associate(n)= colleague زميل عمل/ شريك	(be) associated with+ شخص/ شيئ/ يكون مصاحب/ ملازم ل
in association with بمصاحبه/ بالتزامن مع	associate with+شخص يلازم/ يرافق
associate(v) يلازم/ يصاحب/يأتى مع	

1. -this youth **association** helps poor people
2. You need to work with your **associates** to finish the report.
3. The green color of the trees usually comes **in the association with** spring.
4. Bad cough **associates** smoking
5. People usually **associate** high price with quality.
6. Don't **associate with** bad friend

Culture

culture(n) ثقافه	cultural(adj) ثقافى
culture(n) حضاره	cultured= cultivated(adj) مثقف
culture=cultivation الزراعه	

- The culture of Arab people is different from European culture.
- We are all proud of ancient Egyptian culture.
- Rice culture needs a lot of water.
- There are cultural differences between countries.
- Mr Ali is a cultivated person.

لاحظ بعض التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظيه التاليه:

Western desert الثقافه الغربيه	local culture ثقافه محليه
National culture ثقافه قوميه	common dominant/culture ثقافه سائده
Cultural heritage التراث الثقافى	multicultural society مجتمع متعدد الثقافات

Debt

debt دين	get/fall/run into debt يصبح مدينا ل
be in debt to مدين ل	debt of gratitude/thank مدين بالشكر والامتنان

in heavy debt	عليه ديون كثيره	indebted (to)(adj)	مدين/غارم

1. H- he found a second job to pay back his debts.
2. The old man can't retire because he is in debt.
3. He was in debt to the bank.
4. The old man can't retire because he is heavily in debt.
5. The old man can't retire because he got/ fell/ ran into debt.
6. I owe debt of gratitude to my parents.
7. He is indebted to a car company.

لاحظ بعض المتلازمات اللفظيه التاليه:

Have a debt عليه دين **clear the debts** يسدد كل الديون
Write off /cancel a debt يتنازل عن الدين **A heavy debt** دين كبير
Pay off debts يسدد الديون **Service a debt**يسدد فوائد الديون

merchant	تاجر (شخص/شركه)	**merchandise**	بضاعه

He makes a lot of money as a merchant
His stores are full of high-quality merchandise.

miserable= not happy	بائس/تعيس/شقى
miserable= very little /very bad (adj)	ضئيل /سيئ جدا/(قبل الاسم فقط)
misery	البؤس/ التعاسة/ الشقاء
miser	بخيل

- She has lost her job and family .she looks miserable.
- His miserable income isn't enough for his family.
- I was angry because of my team's miserable performance.
- You don't know the misery of the war and poverty.
- I am sure he won't donate any money .he is a miser.

owe(d)+شخص +مبلغ مالى	يدين ل........ب.....
owe(d)+مبلغ مالى +شخص	يدين ب.....ل....
owe (d)+شخص**+for+**شيئ	يدين ل....مقابل....

- Omar owes Ali ten pounds.
- Omar owes ten pounds to Ali.
- You owe me for the drinks.

لاحظ بعض المتلازمات اللفظيه التاليه:

Owe +شخص+a debt يدين بالفضل ل...
Owe everything to +شخص يدين بكل شيئ ل....
Owe+ شخص + a lot/ a great deal يدين ل...بالكثير من الفضل

1- -we owe our parents a debt.
2- We owe everything to my family.
3- She owes her mother a great deal.

prison	السجن
prisoner(n)	سجين
imprisonment	عقوبه السجن/مده الحبس
imprison	يحبس/ يسجن/ يقيد حريه

prison	سجن كبير
jail	سجن (للحجز المؤقت)
cell	زنزانه(حجره داخل السجن

- Thieves are sent to the prison.
- He was taken to jail.
- The dangerous criminal was kept a lone in a cell.

Prison is a place for criminals . (prison) عند الحديث عن السجن كمكان

لاحظ بعض المتلازمات اللفظيه التاليه:

- **Go to the prison** يتم حبسه
- **Put…… in prison** يضع .....فى السجن
- **Be released from prison** يطلق سراحه من السجن
- **Let……….out of the prison** يخرج منالسجن
- **Get out of prison** يخرج من السجن
- **A prison sentence(25 years)** حكم بالسجن
- **Send ….to prison**
- **Escape from prison** يهرب من السجن

- visitors to the prison wait here.
- In this prison, there is a library for prisoners who like reading.
- No one has seen him since his imprisonment.
- He was imprisoned for selling drugs.

youth	مرحله الشباب
youth	الشباب بوجه عام (يعامل معامله الاسم الجمع
a youth -youths	شاب/شباب(تعد)

- I was very fit in my youth.
- The youth of Egypt are ready to help their country.
- A group of youth are arrested for troublemaking.

prefixesمقاطع بادئه

prefix البادئه	function الوظيفه	examples امثله
dis-	تكون العكس	disabled
mis-	تكون العكس	Mistake /misunderstand
re-	يعيد	Review /rewrite
step-	احد الاقارب(نتيجه الزواج من احد الوالدين	Stepfather /stepmother /stepfamily

Suffixes مقاطع ناهيه

suffix الناهيه	**function الوظيفه**	**examples الامثله**
-able	تكون صفه	miserable
-al	تكون صفه/اسم	criminal
-er	تكون اسم فاعل	dreamer
-ful	تكون صفه	successful
-ing	تكون صفه/اسم	Ending /amazing
-ly	تكون ظرف	exactly
-ual	تكون صفه/اسم	Factual /individual

Clear the confusion

earn money	يكسب مال مقابل عمل
get money	يحصل على مبلغ معين من المال فى مده معينه
make money	يكسب (كثير من المال)بطريقه غير تقليديه

- This doctor earns twenty thousand pounds a day
- I get 4000 pounds a month
- Footballers make a lot of money.

own	يمتلك	borrow	يستلف/يستعير
owe	يدين ب	lend	يقرض /يسلف

- He owns a farm in the countryside
- I owe Ahmed a thousand pounds.
- I borrowed a thousand pounds from Ahmed.
- Ahmed lent me a thousand pounds.

plump	مكتنز - ممتلئ بشكل جذاب(بالنسبه للنساء والاطفال)
fat	سمين
overweight	لديه وزن زائد
obese	سمين جدا(بشكل خطير)

- She is a plump cheerful little girl
- A fat person finds it difficult to do a sport.
- She wants to follow a diet because she is overweight.
- He was an obese teenager.

at the age of	فى سن / فى عمر
in the age of	فى عصر

- I could swim at the age of nine
- In the age of Mohammed Ali , Egypt was a very large Empire.

work	عمل /مكان العمل (كلمه لاتعد)
a work –works	عمل أدبى او فنى(كلمه تعد)
a job -jobs	وظيفه محدده- مهمه (كلمه تعد)

- He did much work in the office yesterday.
- I go to work in my car.
- El-Karnak is a work by Naguib Mahfouz .
- My first job was as a teacher
- I've finished all today's jobs.

invent	يخترع شيئا لم يكن موجودا
discover	يكتشف
explore	يستكشف

- Graham Bell invented the telephone 1876.
- She discovered that she had forgotten her mobile at home.
- Columbus landed on America and explored

hard(adj)	صعب /خشن/ نشيط/ حماسى
hard(adv)	بجد
hardly(adv)	بالكاد

You will have to make some hard decision to solve this problem.

After a month without rain, the ground was too hard to plough.
Success in sport require hard work and a great deal of determination.
She has worked hard all her life and became a great person.
I hardly know your friend. I met him only once.

cause	يجعل	let	يسمح/يدع
make	يجعل	allow	يسمح
force	يجبر	permit	يسمح

فاعل+**cause**+مفعول+**to**+ مصدر

Do you know what causes volcanoes to happen?

فاعل+**made** + مفعول + مصدر
مفعول+**be made** +**to**+ مصدر

The teacher made the student do the experiment again.
The students were made to do the experiment again.

فاعل+**force**+مفعول+**to** + مصدر

the earthquake forced the inhabitant to leave.

فاعل+**let** ++مفعول+ **to** + مصدر

Please let me tell you the story.

فاعل+**allow/ permit** ++مفعول+**to** + مصدر

The mother allowed /permitted her children to play outside.

work for	يعمل لدى	work in (at)	يعمل فى مكان
work as	يعمل ك	work with	يعمل مع
work on	يعمل فى مشروع- يستمر فى عمل- يعمل على تطوير)		

- My brother works for a clothes company in Alex.
- My brother works as a clothes designer in Alex.
- My brother works in Alex.
- My brother works with many efficient people.
- My brother works on the underground.
- I've been working on this project for three years now.

Don't get confused

debt	دين	debate	مناظره
lend	يسلف	borrow	يستلف
earn money	يكسب مال	make money	يكون ثروة
buyer	مشترى	merchant	تاجر
owe	يدين	own	يملك
miserable= very sad	تعيس	arrogant	متغطرس
plump	ممتلئ قليلا	dump	يرمى
go to the prison	يذهب للسجن بغرض الزيارة	go to prison	يذهب للسجن بغرض (جريمه- عمل)
break a law	يخالف القانون	follow rules	يتبع القواعد
break a promise	يخلف وعده	keep a promise	يحافظ على وعده

rat	فأر كبير	mouse	فأر صغير
crime	جريمه	criminal	مجرم
work for	يعمل لصالح	pay for	يدفع ثمن
arrange	يرتب	soak	يمتص
attract	يجذب	extract	مقتبس
several	عديد	visual	بصرى

Reading — David Copperfield



'This is Mr. Quinion, David,' Mr Murdstone said. 'You're going to work for him at Murdstone and Grinby, the bottle merchants, in London. You'll earn enough money to pay for your food, and I've arranged a place for you to live.'

I was ten years old and I was going to go to work. And it was hard work. I went to a dirty old house near the river where rats lived under the floors. **There** my job was to wash empty bottles with three other boys, and I hated it.

One morning, a plump man came to see me with Mr Quinion. 'Ah, Master Copperfield!' the man said 'This is Mr Micawber,' Mr Quinion told me. 'You will be living at his house.'

And that evening, Mr Micawber took me home. His wife – a thin, tired-looking lady – was sitting with a baby. The baby was one of twins, and they had a boy of four and a girl of three.

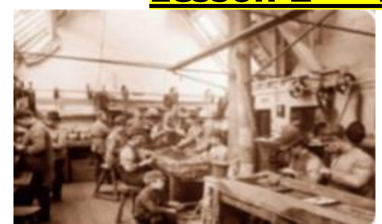
I soon discovered that the Micawbers were poor and that Mr Micawber owed money to several people. One morning the police came and took Mr Micawber away to prison because of his debts. I went to see him there the next Sunday.

'If a man earns twenty pounds a year and spends nineteen pounds, he'll be happy,' he said. 'But if he spends twenty pounds and a penny, he'll be miserable.

Workbook: Reading

The book character David Copperfield went to work when he was ten years old. In the 1800s, it was not unusual for children to work at this age in England. Poor parents did not have the money to send their children to school. They often needed their children to earn money or they could not pay their debts. Factories liked to have children working for them because they did not need to pay them as much as they paid adults. The children could also do some things the adults could not do. For example, they were small so they could go under machines when they broke. The children were often miserable. They worked very long hours and most of them had no opportunity to improve their lives. However, some children learned a skill when they worked. They were the lucky ones, as these new skills helped them to get better jobs when they were older.

Lesson 2 Listening Audio script





Today millions of people know Charles Dickens for the brilliant books that he wrote. He was a great storyteller. But Dickens didn't only want to entertain people with his books, he also wanted to change their opinions about the world they lived in. He hoped his readers would then do something to make the world a better place.

Dickens was most interested in helping poor children because of his own difficult childhood. When he was 12 years old, Charles' father was sent to prison. Like David Copperfield, he had to leave school and work to support his family instead. The poor Law of 18 removed support for most poor people so their lives were hard.

When he wrote David Copperfield between 18 and 1850, Dickens wanted to show us that not all poor people were bad. Like his father, Mr Micawber went to prison because he had no money but after he left prison, he wanted to help David because he was a good man. In Dickens' books, people who worked hard were also often rewarded. For example, at the end of the book, David Copperfield becomes a successful writer.

Dickens also wanted to say that rich people needed to do something to help the poor. In David Copperfield, a man called Mr Wickfield helps David by giving him a room. Dickens thought that people like Mr Wickfield were honest and good and deserved to be rewarded. Other people in the book, on the other hand, were bad and had an unhappy end.

Audio Script



Let's talk about how to write a great short story. It's important to plan your story. It should have four parts. At the start, we find out when and where the story is happening and we meet the main character. Don't spend too much time describing places and people – your characters need to do something from the start.

In the second part of the story, the main character has a problem or something goes wrong. It's a good idea to have two or more problems. After that, the problem or problems are solved and everything is OK again. In this third part of the story, there should be a surprise for the reader. Finally, we find out what the characters do next, so, what happens to them when things are OK again

.

Reading A summary of David Copperfield

A David Copperfield grew up with his mother and his stepfather, Mr Murdstone. B Some time later, Uriah Heep played a trick on Aunt Betsey and took her money and David worked hard to help her. C Then David's mother died and Mr Murdstone took him to live with Mr and Mrs. Micawber. David had to leave school and work in a factory. Then Mr Micawber went to prison and David had nowhere to live. D When David returned to England, he married Agnes and he became a successful writer. E When David found Uriah Heep, he admitted that he took Aunt Betsey's money and David made him give it back to her. Then David went travelling around Europe. F Without a home to live in, David visited Aunt Betsey and she took him to live with her friend, Mr Wickfield. A man called Uriah Heep also lived with Mr Wickfield and his daughter, Agnes, but David didn't trust him.

Video Script

People have always told stories. Thousands of years ago they told stories about dangerous places to hunt so the people in their community wouldn't go there. Older people told stories about the people who came before them. They couldn't write the stories down and they didn't want to lose them, so, they painted pictures to tell stories. If you put your message into a story, people will remember it because they'll feel an emotional connection to the people and places in the story. They may even decide to do something to help the people in the story or people like them. They say a picture can tell a thousand words, but the words in a story can touch a thousand lives.

Exercises on vocabulary

(1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Charles Dickens wrote great………….. like, "Oliver Twist" and "A Tale of Two Cities".
a) plays **b) novels** **c) reports** **d) poems**

2- Thieves and criminals are sent to ………….. to have their punishment.
a) the cinema **b) prison** **c) the restaurant** **d) school**

3- People who borrow a lot of money get into ....
a) pain **b)mess** **c)debt** **d) space**

4- A .... writes for a newspaper.
a) scientist **b) journalist** **c) teacher** **d) doctor**

5- Naguib Mahfouz wrote novels to describe life in 20th .... Egypt.
a) decade **b)time** **c) century** **d)age**

6- TV presenters .... sports stars on most favourite TV programmes.
a) test **b) interview** **c) examine** **d) check**

7- If you spend too much money, you will be .... debt.
a) on **b)at** **c)over** **d)in**

8- Oliver Twist was born and grew up in a .... because he was an orphan
a) work **b) garage** **c) factory** **d) work**

9-If you don't have enough money , you can ………….. a room with another person.

a) divide b) share c) take part d) collect

10-. Life is full of situations which we must accept as we have no ....

a) appetite b) choice c) desire d)need

11 –My friend .... me to his wedding party and I accepted his invitation.

a) invented b) invited c) introduced d) intended

12-A father has to work hard to ………….. enough money for his family.

a) win b)earn c) reward d)rob

13-My uncle works ………….. a professor at Ain Shams University.

a) like b) such as c)as d) the same

14-Charles Dickens had a very .... childhood.

a) easy b) happy c) pleasant d)hard

15-Adel Imam is best………….. for his funny films and plays.

a) know b)knew c) known d) Knowing

16 -Dickens wrote magazine ………… when he worked as a journalist.

a) plays b) stories c)novels d) poems

17- -Amir's father has married two women, so Amir has some ………. brothers and sisters.

a) quarter b)half c) third d) unreal

18-We live in a nice house ………….. the river.

a) in b)at c)on d)by

19-Wise people should learn the ………….. of the stories they read.

a) moral b) mineral c) mirror d) mayor

20 – Some burglars broke into the old lady's house and ………….. her of all her money.

a) robbed b) stole c) borrowed d)lent

21- Charles Dickens is best known for his ………….. about the poor .

a) essays b) poems c)plays d) novels

22-The ………….. can bb responsible for their deeds.

a) babies b) children c) adults d)dead .

23-We saw an exciting ………….. in the theatre.

a) play b)film c) movie d) novel

24-The police found the lost child and ………….. him back to his family.

a) took b) introduced c) described d) invited

25- I must be………….. for my work so that I can support my family.

a) earned b)paid c) believed d)won

26- Because the man and his wife didn't have children, they ………….. a child at their home.

a) adopted b) adapted c) admired d) adored

27-A ………….. of thieves broke into the bank and stole a lot of money.

a) company b) crowd c)gang d)team

28- I have read a ………….. of Oliver Twist by Charles Dickens

a) summary b) summer c) summarise d) summon

29-There was a ………….. in the house next door while everyone was asleep at home

a) court b) burglary c) burger d) gallery

30-The thief who ………….. your mobile was caught last night

a) stool b) robbed c) stole d) steel

31………….. should be punished severely for the crimes they commit .

a) Criminals b) Caramel c) Commuters d) Cullers

32-The gang ………….. the child and kept him as a hostage.

a) found **b) kidnapped** **c) helped** **d) held**

33-Aseel is my ………….. She is my sister's daughter.

a) nephew **b) niece** **c) aunt** **d) mum**

34- I usually keep my money in a secret ………….. in my jacket.

a) box **b) boot** **c) pocket** **d) packet**

35- The factory ………….. promis ed the workers to be given a rise.

a) manager **b) colleague** **c) worker** **d) cleaner**

36- I ………….. my new friend to my family and they welcomed him.

a) produced **b) deduced** **c) introduced** **d) offer**

37- Fagin is a criminal who trains boys to be …………..

a) officers **b) thieves** **c) managers** **d) doctors**

38- Oliver saw the boys ………….. something from Mr Brownlow.

a) to take **b) to taking** **c) taking** **d) taken**

39- Oliver realizes he can't live as a thief and runs …………..

a) out **b) up** **c) down** **d) away**

40- While breaking into the house at night , he was…………..

a) shot **b) shout** **c) shoot** **d) shit**

41-Mrs Maylie let Oliver ………….. with her and her niece.

a) to stay **b) to staying** **c) stay** **d) staying**

42- The Maylies found ………….. that Rose was Oliver's aunt.

a) out **b) up** **c) down** **d) away**

43- ………….. the end . Oliver was adopted by Mr Brownlow and lived happily .

a) At **b) Of** **c) In** **d) On**

44- How do you think Oliver felt when he arrived in London ………….. his own

a) by **b) of** **c) on** **d) in**

45- Mr Bumble was angry ………….. because he wanted more food.

a) by **b) with** **c) on** **d) in**

46-The Parliament should pass strict ………….. to criminate building on agricultural land

a) motivation **b) low** **c) laws** **d) lawyers**

47- The boy spent a lot of time ………….. cartoons on his mobile.

a) watching **b) to watch** **c) watch** **d) watched**

48- The problem is solved and things are ………….. again.

a) bad **b) worse** **c) wrong** **d) OK**

49- It is important for the writer to ………….. his story

a) plan **b) planning** **c) plane** **d) plant**

50-Think of an idea for a short story………….. the place . the time , the characters ,etc.

a) Brain **b) Brain drain** **c) Brainstorm** **d) Brain**

51- I really want to do something to help other people in my ………….. time.

a) free **b) fare** **c) fair** **d)flee**

52- do you have any suggestion for ………….. work I can do?

a) volunteer **b) voluntary** **c) volume** **d) vacuum**

53- Since my uncle travelled abroad , I haven't heard ………….. him

a) of **b) about** **c) from** **d) off**

54- I appreciate the girls who help their mothers ………….. their housework

a) with **b) about** **c) in** **d) off**

The present Perfect Simple Tense
زمن المضارع التام البسيط

Form

have + p.p (التصريف 3)
Has + p.p (التصريف 3)

- -the police (**have**- has) helped people a lot.
- -My mother (have- **has**) cooked our food.

Negative

haven't \ hasn't +p.p

- -Rewan (**hasn't** –haven't) done her homework.
- -Mona and her friend (hasn't –**haven't**) been to school.

question

Have \ Has فاعل **+** **p.p**

- -Has he (witness- **witnessed**) the accident.
- -Have they (**tried** – try) to solve the problem.

Passive

Have \has مفعول **been + p.p**

- -The report (has checked –**has been checked**) properly.
- -A lot of projects have (carried – **been carried**) out in the new administration capital.

Usage

1-حدث بدأ في الماضي ومازال حتى الوقت الحاضر.

- **-He has lived in Cairo since 2009.**

معنى هذه الجملة أنه يعيش فى القاهرة فى عام 2009 ومازال يعيش حتى وقتنا هذا.

2-حدث في الماضي وانتهي ولكن مازال له آثر في الوقت الحاضر.

- -I (**forget- have forgotten**) my key so I can't open the door now.

-عملية نسيان المفتاح فى الماضى وله اثر فى الوقت الحاضر. لم يستطيع فتح الباب.

3-حدث انتهي منذ فترة وجيزة وهنا دائما نجد كلمة just

- -I (**have just cooked** –cooked) the food .would you like to have a sandwich?

4-حدث في الماضي ولم يتم تحديد وقت حدوثه

- -I (bought- **have bought**) a beautiful car.
- -I (**bought**- have bought) a beautiful car last week.

5-عند التحدث أو السؤال عن الخبرات الماضية بالبلدى كده هل انت عملت هذا الشئ طوال حياتك أم لا مثل:

- -(**Have you ever been**- Did you ever go) to the zoo?
- -I (**have never been** – was never) to the zoo.

6-حدث في الماضي وانتهى ولكن قابل للتكرار في المستقبل.

- -Messi is a good player, he(**has scored**-scored) 100 goals.
- -Messi was a good player, he(has scored-**scored**) 100 goals.

فى الجملة الثانية غير قابل للتكرار

7-نستخدم المضارع التام مع اللروابط الزمنية الدالة على المستقبل

- After \ as soon as \ when
- Before \ By the time \ once

+ مضارع تام ، أى مستقبل

- -After she (**has done** – did) the homework, she will watch TV.
- -Once I (**have finished** – finished) my duty, I 'll inform you.

8-عند ذكر عدد مرات حدوث الحدث ولم نحدد نقطة زمنيه في الماضي.

-He (had visited- **has visited**) Cairo three times.

Key words

since	منذ	**for**	لمدة
just	توا \احالا	**already**	بالفعل لا
yet	حتى الآن	**never**	من قبل
recently	حديثا	**lately**	مؤخرا
so far	حتى الآن	**up till now**	حتى الآن
over the ages	على مر العصور	**over the years**	على مر السنين
since when	منذ متى	**for how long**	لمدة كام
this week	هذا الأسبوع	**ever since**	منذ
in the recent years	فى السنوات الأخيرة	**this year**	هذا العام
ever	من قبل	**in the last few years**	فى السنوات القليلة الماضية

عندما نرى الكلمات السابقة فأننا نتذكر زمن المضارع التام

Up till now, sofar , over the ages - over the years

وتستخدم هذه الكلمات فى بداية أو نهاية الجملة فى زمن المضارع التام

- -So far , I (didn't meet –**haven't met**) manager.
- -Over the ages ,Egypt (faced- **has faced**)a lot of problems.

- **Lately** مؤخرا

وتستخدم فى بدية أو نهاية الجملة ويفضل استخدامها فى النفى

- **Recently** حديثا

وتستخدم فى بدية أو نهاية الجملة ويفضل استخدامها فى الاثبات

- -I haven't seen John (**lately**- recently)

- -Recently, Egypt (took – **has taken**) new steps towards progress.

ever من قبل
وتستخدم فى منتصف الجملة **1**-السؤال **2**-التفضيل
never أبدا
تستخدم فى منتصف الجملة **1**-نفى **2**-مقارنة
yet قطعا\حتى الآن
وتستخدم فى آخر الجملة **1**-نفى **2**-سؤال

- -Have you b(**ever** –yet)seen the pyramids ?
- -No, I have (ever –**never**) seen them.
- -Have you done the homework (never-**yet**) ?
- -No, I haven't don't it (never-**yet**).
- -She is the most polite girl I have (**ever**-never) known.
- -I have (ever-**never**)met a more polite girl than Asmaa.

ولكن خلى بالك:

- -Shakespeare is the best writer **ever**.

إن شكسبير هو أفضل كاتب على مر الزمان.

وهنا **Yet = but** -He is intelligent , **yet** he is careless.

- **Just** توا\ حالا \ **already** بالفعل

-وتستخدم هذه الكلمات بعد الفعل المساعد

- He (***has just*** –just have) done the homework.
- -the letters (**have just** – just have) been sent.

ركز فى الفارق فى المعنى

Just توا \ حالا **already** بالفعل

- **-I have (just – already) visited Paris. I was in 2009.**

وهنا فى الجملة التركيز على وقوع الحدث فقط وليس وقوعة حديثا

Just now **من الكلمات الدالة على الماضى البسيط وليس المضارع التام**

- -I (**did** –have done) the homework just now.

تستخدم **Already** فى نهاية الجملة لتدل على السرعة والدهشة .

- Have you written the homework **already** ? you are very fast

حالات خاصة ب Just

- -Really he is just; he has given them their rights.

هنا Just بمعنى عادل.

A: Mum, I want to eat.
B: just a minute.

هنا Just بمعنى انتظر.

This

- **This** week /month – year – century يفضل المضارع التام عن الماضى البسيط
- **This** morning – afternoon – evening يفضل الماضى البسيط عن المضارع التام
- -I (visited -**have visited**) my uncle this week.
- -I (achieved – **have achieved**) a lot this month.

بفأننا نستخدم مضارع تام أو ماضى بسيط و الأفضل ولكن الأمر يختلف مع جزء من اليوم ماضى بسيط

- -I (**sent** –have sent) a letter earlier this morning.

Since منذ ويأتى بعدها بداية المدة الزمنية
For لمدة ويأتى بعدها مجمل المدة الزمنية

Since		for	
since 2009	منذ 2009	for 5 years	لمدة خمس سنوات
since summer	منذ الصيف	for 2 seasons	لمدة أسبوعين
since October	منذ شهر اكتوبر	for 3 months	لمدة 3 شهور
since Monday	منذ يوم الاثنين	for 2 weeks	لمدة اسبوعين
since 7 o'clock	منذ الساعة السابعة	for an hour	لمدة ساعة
since 6 p.m.	منذ السادسة مساءا	for a day	لمدة يوم
since 5:30	منذ الخامسة والنصف	for many years	لسنوات عديدة

Since – for وكمان

for the last year	طوال السنه الأخيرة	since last	منذ\الماضى
for years	لسنوات	since yesterday	منذ أمس
for ages	لعصور	since then	منذ ذلك الحين
for while	لفترة	since Adam and Eve	منذ آدم وحواء
for awhile	لفترة قصيرة	since his birthday	منذ عيد ميلاده
for long	لأمد بعيد	since +اسم	منذ+اسم
for as long as you can remember	لأقصى مدة زمنية تستطيع ان تتذكرها	since+ جمل فى الماضى البسيط	منذ +جملة ماضى بسيط
For the last week		since the last meeting	

-Fill with since / for

1- I have been working in his office ……………a month
2-They have lived in France ………………………1970
3-I have used this medicine …………………twelve years
4- Mr Hassan has been in the hospital ………………his accident
5-We have waited …………………..half an hour
6-He has written stories …………….. as long as you can remember
7-I haven't met Ali ………….. 2003
8-She hasn't done the homework ………………. along time .
9-Samy has carried out the project …………… his father's arrival .



Since قواعد خاصة بـ

مضارع تام **Since** ماضى بسيط

ويجوز الماضي البسيط أن يكون مضارع تام و الأفضل بعد **Since** ماضي

Since ماضى بسيط ، مضارع تام

- -I haven't met him since he (is- **was**) in Cairo.
- -Since she became a doctor, she (didn't meet – **hasn't met**) her old friend.

Since = ever since

- -I have lived in Alex ever since I (have- been born –**was born**)

جمل خاصة ☺

قد يتحول المضارع التام الى ماضى تام مع since في حالتين:

1-اذا سبقت جملة Since بماضى بسيط وأصبح الزمن الذى كان مضارع تام حدث أول مثل:

- -My brother (haven't –**hasn't** –hadn't) sent me a letter since he travelled abroad.
- -My brother sent me a letter last week , he (hasn't –**hadn't**) sent a letter since he travelled abroad.

هنا ترتيب الأحداث:

1-الحدث الأول لم يرسل منذ سفره حتى الأسبوع الماضى. 2-الحدث الثانى الارسال الأسبوع الماضى.

2-الحالة الثانية: عندما تكون جملة Since في غير مباشر

- Ali said " I haven't eaten fish since 1999".
- Ali said that he hadn't eaten fish since 1999.

لاتنسي أننا نقول

- **For how long** + مضارع تام
- **since when** + مضارع تام
- **How long ago** + ماضى بسيط

- -(since – **for**) how long have you lived here.
- -(**since**-for)when have you met the manager?
- -how long ago (**did you make** – have you made) the plan ?

قواعد آخرى تتداخل مع Since

ماضى بسيط + **when**	تصريف2	**Last**	فاعل
ماضى بسيط+ **(was)when**	تصريف 2	فاعل	**The last time**

تاريخ	**since**	مضارع تام
تاريخ +	**in**	ماضى بسيط

- -I last saw Aya (since-for-**when**) she was 12.
- -the last time I ate fish (is-**was**) when we were in Alex.

- -I (**lived**-have lived) in Cairo in 2003.
- -I (lived-**have lived**) in Cairo since 2003.

It's has been\it's مدة زمنية **since** مضارع تام\ماضى بسيط (والأفضل ماضي بسيط)

- -It's a long time since I (**ate-**had eaten) fish.
- -It's two years since I last (**met**-haven't) my uncle.

Since + v_ing وهنا يساوى الاسم

- -Since leaving the university, he (didn't search-**hasn't searched**) for a job.

Since + مدة زمنية **ago**

- -I haven't played (for-**since**) 2 weeks ago.

حالات خاصة ب Since

يمكن استخدام **Since** بمعني لأن **as \ because** وهنا لا يوجد زمن محدد

- -He studies hard **since** he **wants** to achieve his goal.
- -He couldn't answer the phone **since** he **was having** a shower.
- -He can't open the door **since** he **has lost** the key.
- -He couldn't buy anything **since** he **had lost** his money.

It's the first\only\ .....+ مضارع تام

- -it's the first time I (play-**have played**).

Have\has been to ذهب وعاد **have \has gone to** ذهب ولم يعد

- -He has (**been** – gone) to Alex, he returned just now.
- -He has (been- **gone**) to Alex, he will come tomorrow.

In

- -He is in Cairo أى انه فى القاهرة الآن
- -He was in Cairo اى انه ليس فى القاهرة الآن
- -He has been in Cairo أى انه عاش أو زار القاهرة

- -Where have you (gone –**been**)?

لأنه امامى الآن لذا فالسؤال أنت كنت فين.

- **In the last few years / months…….** - Egypt has changed a lot in the last few years.
- **In recent years** - It has not rained in the Western Desert in recent years

**Practice Grammar Choose the correct answer

1-They ………. in Luxor since 2015.
a)lived **b)have lived** **c)live** **d)will live**
2-I can't phone my parents because I …….my phone.
a)has lost **b)lose** **c)will lose** **d)have lost**
3-Nawal's younger sister has studied the past tense but she hasn't studied present perfect…… .
a)yet **b)already** **c)since** **d)for**
4-The plane has ……………. . I can see it in the sky.
a)left just **b)just leave** **c)just left** **d)leave**
5-My uncle has lived abroad…….. five years.
a)since **b)already** **c)yet** **d)for**
6-Have you …….. tried English food?
a)since **b)for** **c)just** **d)ever**
7-Micheal Morpurgo is a famous English writer. He ………..many books for children.
a)wrote **b)write** **c)has written** **d)have written**
8-Micheal Morpurgo was a famous English writer. He ………..many books for children.
a)wrote **b)write** **c)has written** **d)have written**
9-Michael……………..writing stories for children when he was a primary school teacher.
a)started **b)has started** **c)will start** **d)starts**
10)Basel is not hungry. He ……… a big lunch.
a)ate **b)has eaten** **c)is eating** **d)eats**
11-We can't go home by bus. The last bus……….thirty seconds ago.
a)left **b)has left** **c)have left** **d)will leave**
12-He's never……… a crocodile,
a) see ***b) Seeing*** ***c) saw*** ***d) seen***
13- It's seven years since they................... Luxor.
d) visits **c. Visiting** **b. have visited** **a. visited**
14-My sister is a new doctor. She has just.........from the Faculty of Medicine
a) been graduated **b) graduated** **c) graduates** **d) graduating**
15- It's the first time I have eaten caviar. I have .... eaten it before.
a) never **b) ever** **c) already** **d) just**
16- Mr Ali lived in Cairo from 1997 until 2007, this means that..........
a)he has lived in Cairo for 10 years. ***b)he has lived in Cairo since 10 years.***
c)he lived in Cairo for 10 years. ***d)he lived in Cairo since 10 years.***
17- He has taught in our school................more than ten years.
a) since ***b) in*** ***c) for*** ***d) at***
18- I haven't written the letter...........
a) now ***b) yet*** ***c) just*** ***d) already*** „
19-It's ten years ....I visited London.
a) just ***b) for*** ***c) ago*** ***d) since***
20-A lot of new schools.................. recently.
a) built ***b) are built*** ***c) have been built*** ***d) have built***

More Exercises on Grammar

1) Choose the correct answer

1- A long time has passed ………………… I saw him.
a) as long as **b) because** **c) since** **d) until**
2- My uncle ……………… to Germany lately.
a) is **b) will be** **c) has been** **d) is being**
3- I have had a cold ……………… two weeks.

a) since b) for c) ago d) from

4- You look pale. ………………… to you?

a) Has anything happened b) Will anything happen
c) Had anything happened d) Was anything happening

5- Have you ………………… been to Cambridge University?

a) lately b) never c) ever d) already

6- They ……………………what to do for the holidays yet.

a) hadn't decided b) won't decide c) don't decide d) decided

7- Rania ………………… as a doctor for the last ten years.

a) has worked b) worked c) had worked d) is working

8- Amr…………………… all night and he is very tired.

a) has worked b) worked c) had worked d) is working

9- Ali has travelled ………………… the last five days.

a) for b) ago c) when d) since

10- I have done my homework ………………… three hours.

a) for b) ago c) when d) since

11- Fady has learnt English …………………… he was 7 years old.

a) for b) ago c) when d) since

12- I …………………… on this English exercise for the last hour!

a) has been working b) worked c) have worked d) was working

13- They have been doing the homework …………………… 6 o'clock.

a) for b) ago c) from d) since

14- We ……………… here for 6 years and we don't intend to move.

a) have lived b) has lived c) lived d) were living

15- She ……………… for the test for three hours.

a) has revised b) revised c) had revised d) revises

16- She ………………… the driving test.

a) just has passed b) has just passed c) passes d) is passing

17- ………………… you watched that film yet?

a) Do b) Did c) Have d) Had

18- Where's Hala? I can't see her. – She ……………… to the shops.

a) goes b) has gone c) has been d) had been

19- Samira has lived here ………………… she was a child.

a) for b) ago c) when d) since

20- Aida is very tired. She ………………… very hard.

a) has worked b) have worked c) worked d) been working

21- I haven't been swimming …………………… last summer.

a) for b) ago c) when d) since

22- She hasn't been to Cairo …………………… many years.

a) for b) ago c) when d) since

23- I …………………… tennis since the age of ten.

a) have played b) played c) has played d) was playing

24- Have you eaten anything ………………… this morning?

a) for b) ago c) when d) since

25- I haven't seen him ………………… we were in London.

a) for b) ago c) when d) since

26- It …………………… heavily for the last two hours. I's still raining.
a) has rained b) had rained c) rained d) been rained
27- He ……………… the piano since he was eight.
a) plays b) is playing c) has played d) had played
28- I …………………… three movies this week.
a) saw b) have seen c) had seen d) was seeing
29- My brother has been travelling since he ………………… school.
a) has finished b) had finished c) finishes d) finished
30- Amna ………………… a new store recently.
a) had opened b) was opening c) opens d) has opened
31- We ………………… in Canada since 1986.
a) have lived b) lived c) were living d) had lived
32- Salma has been ill ……… this morning .
a- for b- since c- ago d- lately
33- Alla has ……. To Luxor. She is still there .
a- been b- be c- go d- gone
34- Ahmed has ……… to Alex. He came back yesterday.
a- been b- be c- go d- gone
35- Have you ever visited Rome? Yes, I …….. there last year .
a- have b- travelled c- travel d- has travelled
36- Tarek ....how to swim three years ago.
a) will learned b) had learned c) learned d) have learned
37- I lost my house key last week and I .... it yet.
a) have found b) haven't found c) didn't found d) found
38- I .... for over five years now and I will never smoke again.
a) don't smoke b) didn't smoke c) haven't smoked d) smoking
39- We've been here ....an hour.
a) since b) for c) ago d) yet
40- We've been here .... 4 o'clock.
a) since b) for c) ago d) yet
41) It's more than 20 years ………. I travelled.
a- while b-before c- since d- when
42) salma ……………… tennis since she was five years old.
a- has played b- was playing c-played d-is playing
43) oh ! i…………. my passport. What should I do?
a- lose b- have lost c- were losing d- lost
44) I can't phone my sister because I ……………..my phone
a- lose b- lost c- have lost d- had lost
45) the plane has ……………..left. I can see it in the sky
a- ever b- yet c- just d- never
46) it's two weeks since we ………………
a- meeting b- had met c- meet d-met
47) tamer ……….a lot of health problem since he started living in this polluted city.
a- has b- had c- has had d- was having
48) I have ……………..been to the zoo before.
a- just b- yet c- ever d- never

Treasure Island Chapter 3

take a note	يدون ملاحظة	danger	خطر
own	يمتلك	dangerous	خطير
owner	مالك	(be) able to + inf.	قادر على
full of ملئ ب X empty	فارغ	choose (*chose*/*chosen*)	يختار
surprised	مندهش	sail with	يبحر مع
quickly	بسرعة	at the front of	امام/فى مقدمة
finger	اصبع يد	worry	يقلق / القلق
stop	يتوقف / يمنع	worried (adj)	قلقان/قلق
pay for	يدفع ل	Mutiny	تمرد / عصيان/ يتمرد
helpers	مساعدين	mutineer	متمرد
come with	يأتى مع	keep….safe	يحفظ....سالم/امن
catch	يقبض على / يمسك / يلحق	agree with	يتفق مع
along	بطول	begin (*began*/*begun*)	يبدأ
harbour	ميناء لرسو السفن	crutch	عكاز / دعامة/مسند
different	مختلف	look after	يعتنى ب
size	حجم	parrot	ببغاء
reach	يصل	laugh	يضحك
problem	مشكلة	decide to	يقرر ان
why not?	لما لا	barrel	برميل
destination	جهة الوصول	nearly	تقريبا
journey	رحلة	nearby	قريب / مجاور
secret	سر / سري	terrible=horrible	فظيع
explain	يشرح	wait for	ينتظر ل
crew	طاقم السفينة	join	ينضم الى
treasure	كنز	tired of	متعب من
patient (adj) صبور (n)	مريض	pirate	قرصان
map	خريطة	gang	عصابة
dead	ميت	kill يقتل killer	قاتل
realise	يدرك	frightened	خائف
land (n) (v)	ارض/يابسة/يهبط	news (Un)	أخبار (لا تعد)





The next morning, Mr Trelawney asked me to take a note to Long Adel Silver. I went to the inn which Silver owned. It was full of people, but I soon saw a tall, strong man with one leg. He looked very happy and seemed to know all of the people there. I walked up to him and gave him the note. When he saw that it was from Mr Trelawney, he looked surprised and said, "Ah, you must be the new ship's boy!"

في صباح اليوم التالي ، طلب مني السيد تريلاوني ان اخذ رسالة إلى لونج جون سيلفر. ذهبت إلى النزل التي كان يملكها سيلفر. كانت مليئة بالناس ، لكنني سرعان ما رأيت رجلاً طويل القامة قويًا له ساق واحدة. بدا سعيدًا جدًا ويبدو أنه يعرف كل الناس هناك. مشيت إليه وسلمته الرسالة. عندما رأى أنها من السيد تريلاوني ، بدا مندهشًا وقال: "آه ، يجب أن تكون فتى السفينة الجديد"!

At that moment, one of the men in the inn quickly left the room. I saw that he had three fingers on one hand. "It's Black Dog!" I called. "Stop him!"

في تلك اللحظة ، غادر أحد الرجال في النزل الغرفة بسرعة. رأيت أن لديه ثلاثة أصابع في احد يديه. "إنه بلاك دوج!" انا صحت. "اوقفوه"!

"Yes, stop him! He did not pay for his food!" called Silver to one of his helpers. The helper ran after the door.

"Do you know that man? Black Dog, is it?" Silver asked me.

"Yes, he was one of the men who attacked my home. Did Mr Trelawney tell you about that?" I replied. "Ah, yes. I've seen him in my inn before. He sometimes comes with a blind man."

"نعم ، أوقفه! لم يدفع ثمن طعامه! " نادى سيلفر على أحد مساعديه. جرى المساعد خلف الباب.

"هل تعرف هذا الرجل؟ بلاك دوج ، اليس كذلك؟ "سألني سيلفر.

"نعم ، كان أحد الرجال الذين هاجموا منزلي. هل أخبرك السيد تريلاوني بهذا؟

"أه نعم. لقد رأيته في نزلي من قبل. كان يأتي احيانا مع رجل أعمى."

"The blind man is called Pew," I said. "He was with Black Dog when they attacked." "Then we must catch them both," said Silver. However, the helper returned and said he could not catch Black Dog.

قلت: "الرجل الأعمى يسمى بيو، لقد كان مع بلاك دوج عندما هاجموا". قال سيلفر: " اذا يجب أن نمسك كلا منهما". ومع ذلك ، عاد المساعد وقال أنه لم يستطع الامساك ببلاك دوج

"Well, we must return to Mr Trelawney," said Silver. We walked back along the harbour past boats of different sizes, all preparing to go to sea. Silver told me all about the boats and I knew that he was a great sailor.

قال سيلفر: "حسنًا ، يجب أن نعود إلى السيد تريلاوني."

مشينا إلى الخلف على طول الميناء مرورا بمراكب ذات أحجام مختلفة ، وكلهم يستعدون للذهاب إلى البحر. أخبرني سيلفر بكل شيء عن القوارب وعرفت أنه كان بحارًا عظيمًا.

We found Dr Livesy with Mr Trelawney when we returned to his hotel, and told them about Black Dog.

وجدنا الدكتور لايفسي مع السيد تريلاوني عندما عدنا إلى فندقه وأخبرناهم عن بلاك دوج

"There is nothing we can do now," said Mr Trelawney. "We leave at four o'clock this afternoon. Get your hat, Jim, we'll go on the ship now," he said to me.

قال السيد تريلاوني: "لا يوجد شيء يمكننا القيام به الآن، سوف نغادر الساعة الرابعة بعد ظهر هذا اليوم، احضر قبعتك يا جيم ، سنركب السفينة الآن."

It took some time to reach the Hispaniola. When we walked onto the big ship, the captain, Smollett, did not look happy to see us.

"What's the problem?" asked Mr Trelawney. "I don't like the men on this ship and I'm not happy about where we're going," he said.

استغرق الأمر بعض الوقت للوصول إلى هيسبانيولا. عندما مشينا على السفينة الكبيرة ، لم يكن القبطان ، سموليت ، سعيدًا لرؤيتنا" . ما هي المشكلة؟" ، سأل السيد تريلاوني.

قال "لا أحب الرجال الذين على متن هذه السفينة ، وأنا لست سعيدًا بالمكان الذي نحن ذاهبون إليه."

"Why not?" asked Dr Livesy.

"I was told that the destination of the journey was a secret," he explained. "But the crew tell me we're looking for treasure. I know that looking for treasure always means danger. And when I go on a journey, I like to be able to choose my own crew."

"لم لا؟" سأل الدكتور لايفسي قيل لي أن وجهة الرحلة كانت سرية" ، هو اوضح. "لكن الطاقم أخبرني أننا نبحث عن الكنز. أعلم أن البحث عن الكنز يعني دائمًا الخطر. وعندما أذهب في رحلة ، احب أن اتمكن من اختيار طاقمي . "

"Don't you like the crew we chose?" asked Mr Trelawney.

"If I sail with them, I want you to stay at the front of the ship for all the journey, and to keep guns with you. And don't show anyone the map," said Smollett.

سأل السيد تريلاوني "ألا تحب الطاقم الذي اخترناه؟"

"إذا أبحرت معهم ، أريدك أن تبقى في مقدمة السفينة طوال الرحلة ، وأن تحافظ على الأسلحة معك. وقال سموليت "لا تُظهر الخريطة لأي شخص."

"Are you worried there will be a mutiny?" asked Dr Livesy.

"It's my job to keep you safe, that's all,' said Smollett, and walked to another part of the ship.

"هل أنت قلق من حدوث تمرد؟" ، سأل الدكتور لايفسي.

قال سموليت ، "انها وظيفتى ان احافظعلى سلامتك ، هذا كل شيء" ، ومشى إلى جزء آخر من السفينة.

"I think you've two good men on the ship," said Dr Livesy. "That's Long Adel Silver and Captain Smollett." "I know Long Adel Silver is a good man," said Mr Trelawney, "but I don't think Captain Smollett is." I agreed with Mr Trelawney. I did not like Captain Smollett.

"أعتقد أن لديك رجلان جيدان على متن السفينة" ، قال الدكتور لايفسي. "هما لونج جون سيلفر وكابتن سموليت". قال السيد تريلاوني: "أعرف أن لونج جون سيلفر رجل جيد ، لكنني لا أعتقد أن الكابتن سموليت كذلك". كنت اوافق السيد تريلاوني فى رأيه. لم اكن احب الكابتن سموليت.

The Hispaniola finally left Bristol and our long journey began. Silver was able to walk around the ship on one leg, using only a crutch. All the men liked him and he was a good cook, his kitchen always clean. When he wasn't working, he looked after his parrot. He called it Captain Flint and said it was 200 years old. The parrot could talk, too, which always made me laugh.

غادرت هيسبانيولا أخيرًا بريستول وبدأت رحلتنا الطويلة. كان بإمكان سيلفر المشي حول السفينة على قدم واحدة ، باستخدام عكاز فقط. كان كل الرجال يحبونه وكان طباخًا جيدًا ومطبخه دائمًا نظيفا. عندما لم يكن يعمل ، كان يعتني بببغائه. كان يسميه كابتن فلينت وقال إن عمره 200 عام. كان بامكان الببغاء أن يتحدث أيضًا ، الأمر الذي جعلني أضحك دائمًا.

One night, before I went to bed, I decided to eat an apple. The apples were kept in a big barrel which I climbed inside, because it was nearly empty. Before I left the barrel, I heard a man talking nearby. It was Silver and what he said was terrible.

في إحدى الليالي ، قبل أن أذهب للنوم ، قررت أن آكل تفاحة. تم حفظ التفاح في برميل كبير تسلقته من الداخل ، لأنه كان فارغًا تقريبًا. قبل أن أغادر البرميل ، سمعت رجلاً يتحدث في مكان قريب. كان فضيًا وما قاله فظيعًا.

“On that journey, Flint was the captain,” he said. “It was then that I lost my leg and Pew became blind. After that journey, I put a lot of money in the bank. It was a great journey, and most of the same crew are on this ship today.”

"في تلك الرحلة ، كان فلينت هو القبطان" ، قال "لقد فقدت ساقي وأصبح بيو أعمى. بعد هذه الرحلة ، وضعت الكثير من المال في البنك. كانت رحلة رائعة ، ومعظم أفراد الطاقم على متن هذه السفينة اليوم"

“You won’t be able to return to Bristol after this journey,” said another sailor called Dick. “What will happen to your inn?” “I’ve sold it,” said Silver. “My wife has the money and is waiting for me to return in a secret place. And after this journey, you’ll have lots of money, too.”

قال بحار آخر يدعى ديك: "لن تتمكن من العودة إلى بريستول بعد هذه الرحلة، ماذا سيحدث لنزلك؟" قال سيلفر: "لقد بعتها، زوجتي لديها المال وتنتظرني للعودة في مكان سري. وبعد هذه الرحلة، سيكون لديك الكثير من المال أيضًا" .

Another man joined them and said, “I’m tired of waiting. When can we attack Captain Smollett?” “You must be patient,” said Silver. “Trelawney has the map, so we wait until they have found the treasure. We might also want Smollett to take us home before we attack.”

انضم إليهم رجل آخر وقال: "تعبت من الانتظار. متى يمكننا مهاجمة الكابتن سموليت؟
قال سيلفر: "يجب أن تكون صبورًا، تريلاوني لديه الخريطة ، لذلك ننتظر حتى يعثروا على الكنز. ربما نرغب أيضًا في أن تأخذنا سموليت إلى البيت قبل الهجوم" .

“We shouldn’t wait that long,” replied another sailor.
“You’re like the others,” said Silver. “You want to do things quickly. That’s what Pew and Flint wanted to do. What happened to them? Pew is blind and Flint is dead.”

قال سيلفر "أنت مثل الآخرين، تريد أن تفعل الأشياء ." أجاب بحار آخر: "يجب ألا ننتظر هذا الوقت الطويل ". ماذا حدث لهم؟ بيو أعمى وفلينت ميت. فلينت و بيو بسرعة. هذا ما أراده

I began to realise that Silver was not only a cook, but he was also a pirate, and the other crew were part of his gang.

بدأت أدرك أن سيلفر لم يكن فقط طباخًا ، ولكنه كان أيضًا قرصانًا ، وكان الطاقم الآخر جزءًا من عصابته.

“No, we wait,” continued Silver. “When the time is right, I’ll kill Trelawney and his friends! Now, Dick, can you get me an apple?”

"لا ، نحن ننتظر" ، امل سيلفر كلامه. "عندما يحين الوقت ، سأقتل تريلاوني وأصدقائه! الآن يا ديك ، هل يمكنك ان تحضر لى تفاحة ؟"

When I heard these words, I was very frightened. However, before Dick came to the barrel, I heard another sailor call out: “I can see land!” It was this news that saved me, because the sailors now all forgot about apples. We were near the Treasure Island.

عندما سمعت هذه الكلمات ، كنت خائفا للغاية. ومع ذلك، قبل وصول ديك إلى البرميل، سمعت بحارًا آخر ينادي: "أستطيع أن أرى الأرض!" كانت هذه الأخبار هي التي أنقذتني ، لأن البحارة الآن نسوا كل شيء عن التفاح. كنا بالقرب من جزيرة الكنز.

Definitions

harbour مرفأ : area of water where ships can stay safely .
mutiny فتنه \ تمرد :when a group of people refuse to obey the person in charge and take control
crutch عكاز \ عصا: a special stick which you put under your arm to help you walk
parrot ببغاء :a brightly coloured bird which can learn to speak.
barrel برميل : a large container made of wood.
pirate قرصان : a sailor who attacks ships and steals from them.
gang عصابة : a group of people that causes trouble
secret سر : known by only few people and kept from others.
patient صبور : able to wait calmly for a long time.
Attack: هجوم an act of violence that is intended to hurt a person or damage a place .

Exercise on Chapter (3)

1-My brother has a.........that can sing and repeat words.
(puppy – kitten – hen – parrot)
2-One of the.......told his captain that he could see land in the distance.
(sails – sailors – sellers – seals)
3-It is not safe to go sailing in this area because there are.........
(rescuers – parrots – pirates – sailors)
4-The coach depends on his....to find information about other teams.
(sailor – helper – pilot – cook)
5-What is your next..........? – I am going to Paris.
(barrel – destination – mutiny – secret)
6-The tiger..........the deer and killed it.
(fed – returned – attacked – protected)
7-If you go on working hard, you will........your goals.
(lose – mistake – fail – reach)
8-What we say here is top........ It is not for publishing.
(secret – public – score – tip)
9-Don't be....... The lion is in its cage.
(tiring – frightening – frightened – tired)
10-I asked Ali to.........the dictionary he had borrowed from me.
(return – take – catch – attack)
11-One of the sailors led a.........against his captain.
(mission – murder – mirror – mutiny)
12-This oil field produces two million.........a day.
(pirates – destinations – barrels – parrots)
13- The fox .... and kills the birds on our farm.
(**feeds – returns – attacks – protects**)

Revision 1 lesson (1&2) Vocabulary

famous (for)	مشهور	Swiss	سويسري
(win/gain) fame	شهرة	Basel	نادى بازل
face (n) (v)	وجه/يواجه / شخص	join	ينضم الى
champion (of)	بطل رياضى	Arsenal	نادى ارسنال
championship	بطولة رياضية	still	مازال
squash	رياضة الاسكواش	beginning	بداية
open (v) (adj)	يفتح / مفتوح	change	يغير/يتغير/تغيير
beat (beat/beaten)	يهزم	admire	يعجب ب
reach	يصل	generous to	كريم مع
final (n) (adj.)	مباراة نهائية/نهائى	desire	رغبة / يرغب فى
top	قمة / أفضل	blood pressure	ضغط الدم
play for	يلعب لصالح	get experience	يكتسب خبرة
team	فريق	volunteer	متطوع
Junior	الناشئين	go diving	يذهب للغوص
do puzzles	يحل الغاز	monitor	يراقب / يرصد
inspire	يلهم	impact	تأثير / يؤثر
footballer	لاعب كرة قدم	marine life	حياة بحرية
strong	قوي	turtles	سلاحف
strength	قوة	lay (laid)	تضع بيض/يضع شيء/يجهز
strengthen	يقوي	flood	فيضان / يفيض
national team	المنتخب الوطنى	endangered	معرض للخطر
time وقت times	مرات	lie in/on (lay/lain)	يقع/يستلقى
score	يحرز	lie to (lied)	يكذب على / كذبة
on TV (television)	فى التلفزيون	disaster	كارثة
move from…..to	ينتقل …. الى	observe	يلاحظ
boyhood club	نادى الصبا	internal flight	رحلة داخلية
the same….as	نفس	bite (bit / bitten)	يعض/عضة
become friends	يصبح اصدقاء	communicate with	يتواصل مع
Switzerland	سويسرا	pocket	جيب

Reading Text (1 / 2) Raneem El Weleily / Mohamed Elneny

Raneem El Weleily is one of Egypt's most famous faces. She was world champion of the squash World Open in 2017, when she beat another Egyptian, Nour El Sherbini. She also twice reached the final in 2014 and 2016 and was the world's top women squash player in 2019. Raneem was born in Alexandria in 1989. She first played for Egypt's squash team when she was only ten. She became World Junior Champion in both 2005 and 2007 before winning her first competition as an adult in 2009. She is now married to another top squash player, Tarek Momen. When she is not playing squash, she likes to listen to music and do puzzles, but it is her success at squash that has inspired many young Egyptians to play the game.



Mohamed Elneny is a famous Egyptian footballer. He is a strong player, and he has played for the Egyptian national team more than 60 times. He has scored more than six times for Egypt, and he is often on television. Elneny was born in 1992 and moved from his boyhood club Al Ahly, in Cairo, to Al-Mokawlon in Nasr City in 2010. He played for Al-Mokawlon at the same time as Mohamed Salah, and the two footballers became good friends. In 2013, Elneny went to Switzerland and joined Basel, one year after Salah went to the same club. Then Elneny went to London, England to join Arsenal. He is still good friends with Salah. 'I'm happy to have been with him since the beginning and he has not changed,' he says.



Listening Text Audio Script

Presenter: Many people want to work with animals or to help the environment. A good way to get experience of this kind of work is as a volunteer. This means working without money, sometimes in another country, and it can be very hard work, but most young people love the experience. We spoke to three young student volunteers to find out what they did during their summer holidays last year.

Adam: Hi, my name's Adam. I spent the summer working with an organisation based on the Red Sea coast in Egypt. It's a beautiful place and many people go there for a holiday. Most tourists like to go diving to see the colourful fish. However, there are so many tourists now that some of the fish are finding life difficult. My job was to help monitor the impact tourists are causing. So, while the tourists were at the beach, or swimming in the sea, I was on a boat counting and monitoring marine life in different areas. It's important to know where the fish are and how many there are of them. Then, at the end of the day, while the tourists were eating in restaurants, I was with a team helping to clean the beaches. It was hard work, but I really enjoyed it. I'm sure my work has helped people to understand the impact tourists have on the Red Sea.

Lara: my name's Lara and I've recently returned from Greece. I spent most of my time on a quiet beach watching big turtles! These beautiful animals visit the same beach every year to lay their eggs. They lay a lot of eggs, but many of the eggs are taken by birds, or flooded by the rain and the sea. These turtles are endangered, so each one of their eggs is important. It was my job to help protect the eggs and to stop tourists visiting the areas where the eggs lie in the sand. It can be a bit of a disaster when tourists visit and put sun umbrellas in the same place as the turtle eggs!

The work was very tiring because we often worked at night. So, when my friends were sleeping, I was there on the beach! But it was a great place and I loved observing the big, slow turtles when they left the beach and slowly swam off into

the sea. In my opinion, it's a great project and I've learned a lot more about conservation, too.

Munir: I'm Munir and I've just spent an amazing few weeks in the north of Thailand. It's a very isolated area and I had to take an internal flight to get there. Thailand is known for its elephants, and many farmers use them on their farms. The elephants are also used to carry tourists. Not all the elephants have an easy life, so I worked with conservationists who were trying to help elephants return to a more natural life in the wild. The elephants are very intelligent and it was amazing helping to feed them. It was not easy work, though. The rainforest was very hot, and there were a lot of dangerous snakes and insects. On one day, a spider bit me on the hand when I was putting something in my pocket. y hand swelled up and I thought, Oh, no! I have a big problem! But local people told me that the spider wasn't a dangerous one, and after a day or two my hand was fine. I don't think everyone would find life in Thailand easy, but I loved it. I've even learnt some Thai. Now, I can communicate with Thai people as well as the elephants!

Revision 1 lesson (3&4) Vocabulary

short story	قصة قصيرة	adventures	مغامرات
describe	يصف	distant = far	بعيد
adjectives	صفات	distance	مسافة
however	ومع ذلك	simple	بسيط
middle	منتصف	type (n) (v)	نوع / يكتب علي
interesting	شيق	fill (with)	يملأ ب
include	يشمل/يتضمن	full (of)	مملوء ب
information	معلومات	screen	شاشة
perhaps	ربما	go out	تنطفئ (الانوار)
in fact	فى الواقع/الحقيقة	association	مؤسسة
reader	قارئ	tournament	مسابقة / دورة
go wrong	يفسد /يتعطل	married to	متزوج من
in the end	فى النهاية	based on	قائم على
imagine	يتخيل	learn about	يتعلم عن
imagination	خيال	swim off into the sea	
imaginary=fictional	خيالي		يتحرك للسباحة فى البحر
imaginative	مبدع	in pairs	فى ثنائيات
compare	يقارن	in groups	فى مجموعات
add …..to	يضيف.... الى	plan a short story	
expect	يتوقع		يضع تصور للقصة القصيرة
visitors	زائرين	too low	منخفض جدا

Reading Text

Why write a long book when you can write a short story? A short story can have 200 words or less. The writer can't describe many people or places and so there aren't so many adjectives in a short story. However, we still need a beginning, a middle and an end to the story. And the story

needs to be interesting, so we include important information and an interesting main character, but perhaps only one. In fact, it can be interesting to write in the first person (I did this …) and then the person telling the story is the main character. Readers can't learn much about this character, perhaps not even their name, but something has to happen to them. This might be a surprise, a problem or something that goes wrong. Readers don't always find out what the character does in the end, but they need to be able to imagine the end of the story.

Read the text and answer the questions: Short Story

It was late and Sara wasn't expecting visitors. She sat alone in her room, with only her laptop and books for company. Her phone was off and she wasn't checking her email. There were too many people in her life with too many problems. And Sara was trying to write her first short story. She imagined wild adventures in distant lands full of exciting people, but Sara knew that she had to keep it simple. As she looked at the empty screen, an idea began to build in her imagination. It was a simple idea and people would understand. She began to type. The words came easily, filling the screen. Then the lights went out and Sara sat in the dark. Now there was only one question: did she remember to save her work?

Answer the following questions:

1- Sara kept herself away from everything because she wanted to….

A) have time to be with herself.

B) think of a new idea for her story.

C) think of a solution to a problem she has.

2- Why wasn't Sara checking her email?

A) Her laptop wasn't working.

B) She didn't have any friends.

C) She didn't want to hear other people's problems.

3- The closest meaning to distant is….

A) busy B) remote and far away C) not having a lot of people

4- What problem did the main character have?

A) She lost her story. B) She forgot her story. C) There was no electricity.

5- What would you do if you were in Sara's place?

……………………………………………………………………………………………

……………………………………………………………………………………………

6- Is it important to have a good imagination? Why / Why not?

……………………………………………………………………………………………

7- What do you think Sara will do next?

……………………………………………………………………………………………

Treasure Island Chapters (1-3)

1- The people tried to catch the thief, but he ....

a. caught b. escaped c. arrested d. managed

2- Be careful or you will fall off the ....; it's very steep.

a. mountain b. hall c. well d. cliff

3- We ....much to our great teachers.

a. take b. lend c. owe d. borrow

4- Pew is ....; he has lost his sight.

a. deaf b. blind c. dumb d. crippled

5- Outside the building, there are two men whose job is to ....and protect us.
a. guard b. attack c. prevent d. own
6- The thief had a long curved ....on his cheek, so we could recognize him.
a. skate b. sky c. skin d. scar
7- What a brave young man! He was the only student who ..... to say the truth.
a. could b. dared c. refused d. disagreed
8- A ....is a group of people who work against the law.
a. gang b. crew c. staff d. team
9- Unfortunately, the burglar ....the house.
a. stole b. took c. owed d. robbed
10- The ship .....helped each other to control the situation well.
a. gang b. staff c. crew d. team
11- A ....is a bird with brightly coloured feathers that can learn to copy human speech.
a. chick b. duck c. parrot d. pirate
12- The police usually look for a ....to solve a crime.
a. clue b. key c. lock d. case
13- There are ....in this villa. They do all the housework.
a. managers b. gentlewomen c. masters d. servants
14- The ....questioned the criminal to know the truth.
a. gang b. manager c. magistrate d. soldier
15- A: What is the ....of the Hispaniola?
B: It's headed to the treasure island.
a. situation b. destination c. position d. condition
16- Flint and his men are ....They attack ships and take money and goods by force.
a. pirates b. drivers c. pilots d. divers
17- A ....is a large container made of wood or metal.
a. tin b. jar c. barrel d. cup
18- The thief ....my bag and ran away.
a. lent b. borrowed c. grabbed d. gave
19- The child seemed to be ill. He was thin and..................
a. fit b. strong c. pile d. pale
20- A ....is a weapon with a long pointed blade and a handle.
a. gun b. sword c. bomb d. pistol

General Exercises on Units (1-3)

1-She is a/an…….for many women in business. They want to follow her example.
(example – important – role model – great)
2-Runners shouldn't run while they were…………….
(ambitious – injured – killers – dead)
3-He sat all the time alone in his room as he was…………..
(plump –dirty – miserable – hard)
4-The food is……, garlicky and delicious.

(cool – cold – flavourless – spicy)

5-The money was……..to the needy and the poor.

(stolen – donated – supported – called)

6-Put some ice on your knee before it………………up.

(treks – swells – leans – isolates)

7-The change in leadership will have a huge……..on the government policy.

(impact – affect – coast – damage)

8-My friends gave me the……..”Einstein” because I like science too much.

(nickname – surname – last name – first name)

9-Judy generally speaks Arabic, but she…….English now.

(speaks – is speaking – spoke – speak)

10-When I arrived at the house, he….. I didn't want to wake him up.

(slept – was sleeping – sleeping – has slept)

11-I ……this old car for 15 years now.

(have had – have been having – has had – am having)

12-It is a very long time……they invited us to dinner.

(for – just – when – since)

13-He didn't answer the phone because he…….on his work.

(concentrated – was concentrating – concentrate – concentrates)

14-Why………you volunteer at the new youth club next summer?

(don't – didn't – do – did)

15-Did you……your arm yesterday?

(broke – break – breaking – broken)

16-We should…….money to charities to help the poor?

(donate – steal – take – refuse)

17-The beach was really……., so we couldn't find a place to sit.

(beautiful – exotic – crowded – isolated)

18-Tourism is…………..when we protect touristic places.

(crowded – sustainable – unique – noisy)

19-Egyptian cotton clothes………all over the world.

(are selling – sell – are sold – sold)

20-The…..is the natural world around us.

(atmosphere – environment – location – situation)

21-A novel usually tells a …………..story.

(long – true – travel – historical)

22-……….your parents usually donate blood? –Yes, they always do so.

(Do – Did – Why – When)

23-When Aya visited me, I…..my room. So, she offered to help me.

(decorate – decorating – was decorating – am decorating)

Unit 4 Making new friends

advice	نصيحه	show	عرض/يعرض	population	السكان
advise	ينصح	host	مضيف/يستضيف	extra	اضافى
noticeboard	لوحه اعلانات	bullying	التنمر/البلطجه	practice	ممارسه
notice	يلاحظ	bully	متنمر/بلطجى	practise	يمارس/ يتدرب
connect	يوصل	negative	سلبى	opportunity	فرصه
connected to	مرتبط ب	effect	تأثير	instead	بدلا من ذلك
connection	صلة/ علاقه	chess	شطرنج	instead of	بدلا من
relation	علاقه	hide	يخفى	experience	خبرة
cool	رائع	rucksack	حقيبه ظهر	experienced	ذو خبرة
stress	الضغط	hate	يكره	expert	خبير
stressed	مجهد	hatred	كراهيه	worry	يقلق/القلق
stressful	شيئ مجهد	detest	يكره	worried	قلق
converse	يتحدث	terrible	فظيع	worrying	القلق
conversation	محادثه	scare	يخيف/يفزع	fight	يتعارك/يتشاجر
personal	شخصى	scared	مرعوب	fighting	شجار/عراك
personally	شخصيا	move to	ينتقل الى	excite	يثير
personality	شخصيه	movement	حركه	exciting	مثير
join	ينضم/يلتحق ب	behave	يتصرف	excitement	إثارة
mate	رفيق/زميل	behaviour	سلوك/تصرف	laugh	يضحك
teammate	زميل فى الفريق	conduct	سلوك/تصرف	laughter	الضحك
roommate	شريك فى السكن	continue	يستمر	phone-in	مداخله تليفونيه
teenager	مراهق	go on	يستمر	nasty	كريه/بغيض
teens	مراهقون	lonely	وحيد	copy	ينسخ
intimate	حميم	loneliness	لشعور بالوحده	debate	مناظرة
friendship	صداقه	overcome	يتغلب على	take turns	يتبادل الادوار
friendly	ودود	produce	ينتج	polite	مؤدب
avoid	يتجنب	production	انتاج	project	مشروع
focus on	يركز على	pronounce	ينطق	come out	يخرج
face	يواجه	pronunciation	النطق	library	مكتبه
break-time	فتره استراحه	inform	يخبر/يعلم	angry with	غضبان من
relax	يسترخى	information	معلومات	anger	الغضب
relaxation	استرخاء	populate	يسكن/يقطن	point at	يشير بأصبعه
relaxing	مريح	population	السكان		

Definition

advice	an opinion someone gives to help you.	نصيحه
take something for granted	to think something is true or will stay the same	يعتبر شيئ من المسلمات
Noticeboard	a thing on a wall that people put information on	لوحه اعلانات
connection	something that brings people together	وصله/علاقه
bully(v,adj)	to threaten to hurt someone or frighten them, especially someone smaller or weaker.	يبلطج

bully(n)	someone who uses tier strength tor power to frighten or hurt someone who is weaker.	بلطجى
bullying(n)	the use of strength or power to frighten or hurt someone who is weaker.	البلطجة او التنمر
cheat(v,ed)	to act in a dishonest way in order to gain an advantage ,especially in a game ,competition, an exam …..etc .	يغش
cheat(n)	someone who acts in a dishonest way in order to gain an advantage ,especially in a game ,competition, an exam …..etc .	غشاش
cheating(n)	acting in a dishonest way in order to gain an advantage ,especially in a game ,competition, an exam …..etc .	الغش
nurse(n)	someone whose job is to look after people who are ill or injured , usually in a hospital.	ممرضة
nurse(v)	to look after someone who is ill or injured.	يمرض
nursing(n)	the job or skill of looking after people who are ill or injured.	التمريض
police(v)	to keep control over an area to make sure that laws are obeyed and that people and property are protected using a police force.	يفرض الامن والانضباط
police(n)	the people who work for an official organization whose job is to catch criminals and make sure that people obey the law.	الشرطة

Important preposition

move to	ينتقل الى	**talk to**	يتحدث الى
instead of	بدلا من	**good at**	جيد فى
ask for advice	يطلب نصيحه	**look at**	ينظر الى
spend time with	يقضى الوقت مع	**good for**	مفيد ل
tell…. About	يخبر..... عن	**nasty to**	يذيئ/ كريه ل/شرير
get to	يصل الى	**connect with**	يتصل ب
at school	فى المدرسه	**stressed about**	قلق/خائف
in the library	فى المكتبه	**stressful for**	مرهق ل
at break-time	فى وقت الراحه	**worried about**	قلق بشأن
reason for	سبب/مبرر ل	**learn from/about**	يتعلم من
add to	يضيف الى	**sure about**	متأكد من
find out about	يعرف /يكتشف	**different to/from**	مختلف عن
talk about	يتحدث عن	**difficult for**	صعب ل
on the line	على الخط/ متصل		

Expressions

make friends	يصادق/يكون صداقات	on (my)own	بمفردى
befriend	يصادق/يكون صداقات	feel better	يشعر بتحسن
bring…… together	يقرب/يجمع	make it clear	يوضح
stay the same	يبقى دون تغيير	get along with	ينسجم /يكون على وفاق مع
do team sports	يمارس رياضه جماعيه	As far as I am concerned	بقدر ما انا مهتم
go online	يتصل بالانترنت	leave behind	يترك/ينسى

busy talking to	مشغول فى الحديث مع	have an effect **on**	له تأثير على
get to	يصل الى	**social** media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
bulletin board	لوحه اعلانات	**take** time	يستغرق وقت
blow a whistle	يطلق صافرة	**fight** the bullies	يكافح المتنمرين
climb out of a barrel	يصعد خارجا من برميل	**hold** into the branch of a tree	يتعلق بفرع شجره
mark something on a map	يترك علامه على خريطه	**join** clubs	ينضم للانديه
spend the afternoon **on** an island	يقضى الظهيره على جزيره	**pass** an exam	يجتاز الامتحان
call the police	يطلب الشرطه	**give** advice	يقدم نصيحه
face a problem	يواجه مشكله	**give** an opinion	يعطى رأى
be **good** friends with	يكون علي صداقه قويه ب	**find** out	يكتشف
play **for**	يلعب ل	**student** volunteers	متطوعين من الطلاب
be well **paid for**	يحصل علي مقابل جيد علي	in pairs	في ثنائيات

important Expression, phrases and Idioms

feel so hard	يكون صعب على	**avoid** problems with	يتجنب المشاكل مع
feel connected **to**	يشعر بأنه مرتبط ب	**have** a good experience	يمر بتجربه جيده
feel happy	يشعر بسعاده	**go** online	يدخل على الانترنت
feel better	يشعر بتحسن	**have** problems with	لديه مشاكل مع
feel stressed	يشعر بالتوتر	**the best** thing to do is…	افضل شيئ تعمله هو....
a **piece** of advice	نصيحه واحده	**It's** very easy to	من السهل ان
part of a team	جزء من فريق	start conversation with	يبدأمحادثات مع
take turns	يتبادل الادوار	on my own	بمفردى
make it easier	يجعله اكثر سهوله	as far as I am concerned	على قدر وعى/فى رأى

Antonyms

connect	يوصل	disconnected	يفصل
host	مضيف	guest	ضيف
polite	مؤدب	impolite	غير مؤدب/وقح
fortunately	لحسن الحظ	unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
negative	سلبى	positive	ايجابى
hate	يكره	love/ adore	يحب/يعشق
production	انتاج	consumption	استهلاك

Synonyms

word	synonyms مترادفات
connection	relation/bond
teammate	friend/companion
busy	occupied/engaged
favourite	best loved/preferable
connected	linked/joined/attached

Do - make

do puzzles	يحل الغاز	make notes	يدون ملاحظات
do a quiz	يقوم بعمل تمرين	make mistakes	يرتكب اخطاء

Go

go wrong	يتعطل	go swimming	يسبح
go mad	يجن	go for a swim	يسبح

Tell

tell the truth	يشهد الحق	tell a story	يحكي قصه
tell lies	يكذب	tell a joke	ينكت

Win

win a race	يفوز بسباق	win a medal	يفوز بيمداليه
win a match	يفوز بمباراه	win a competition	يفوز بمسابقه

Have

have a desire	لديه رغبه قويه	have a disease	يعاني من مرض
have a vote	يجري اقتراع	have a lecture	لديه محاضره

verbs, collocations متلازمات لفظيه

be	-different to/from يكون مختلف عن -not welcome here غير مرحب به -right to يكون محق فى
call	the police يطلب الشرطه
face	a problem يواجه مشكله
feel	at home يشعر بالراحه better يشعر بتحسن connected to لديه ارتباط ب like يرغب ف/يريد safe يشعر بالامان so hard تبدو صعبه جدا stressed يشعر بضغط
fight	the bullies يقاتل المتنمرين
get	good marks يحصل على درجات جيده
give	advice on ينصح بخصوص an opinion يعطى رأى information يعطى معلومات
go	online يدخل على الانترنت
join	clubs ينضم للانديه
make	friends يكون أصدقاء
pass	an exam يجتاز امتحان
start	a conversation يبدأحوار a new school ينتقل لمدرسه جديده
take	for granted يأخذ كأمر مسلم به a photo يلتقط صوره turns يتبادل الادوار

Don't get confused

connection	علاقه/ صله	**conduction**	توصيل الضوء/الحراره/الكهرباء
teenagers	المراهقون	**adults**	البالغون
move	ينتقل/يتحرك	**remove**	يزيل
bully	بلطجى	**pulley**	بكرة رفع
personal	شخصى	**personnel**	شئون الموظفيين
stressed	متوتر/قلق	**distressed**	مكتئب/حزين
cheat	يغش	**sheet**	ملايه

lonely	وحيد/منعزل	**alone**	بمفرده
disease	مرض	**decease**	وفاة
teammate	زميل فى العمل	**classmate**	زميل فصل دراسى

- يمكن تحويل بعض الافعال فى اللغه الانجليزيه الى اسماء بإضافه اللاحقه **(-ion)**او**(-tion)**

connect	يوصل	connection	صله/علاقه
populate	يسكن/يقطن	population	عدد السكان
produce	ينتج	production	الانتاج
inform	يبلغ/يعلم	information	معلومات
communicate	يتواصل	communication	اتصال
pronounce	ينطق	pronunciation	النطق

2- يمكن ان نتستخدم(مصدر+**to**) بعد أدوات الاستفهام عندما تستخدم كروابط فى السؤال الغير مباشر

- I got lost and didn't know where to go.
- Could you tell me where to find a good hotel?
- We must find out what to do next.

3- الكلمات الاتيه تتبع بفعل مفرد وتستبدل بضمير جمع

something	, everything	, nothing	, anything
someone	, everyone	, no one	, any one
somebody	, everybody	, no body	, any body

- Does anybody want cake?
- Anybody who wants cake should pass their plate.
- Nobody brought their bag.
- Everyone likes talking about themselves.

4-لاحظ المشتقات المستخدمه مع الكلمات الاتيه

Verb		**noun for action**		**noun for person**	
Bully	يتنمر	bullying	التنمر	bully	متنمر
Cheat	يغش	cheating	الغش	cheat	غشاش
Nurse	يرعى	nursing	التمريض	nurse	ممرضه
Police	يتحكم امنيا	policing	حفظ النظام	police	الشرطه

Drill : complete the sentences with the correct words:

1- ....people when they are ill , but my cousin wants to be a .... when she finishes school .
2- It's wrong to .... in exams . ...is always bad .
3- It's always easy to .... this village because everyone is friendly . they don't need to call the .... very often .
4- .... is not allowed at this school and we want all our students to feel safe . ... are not welcome here

5-include / contain /consist /enclose

- **Include** يشمل /يتضمن/يضم(جزء من كل /تعطى فكرة الاضافه)
- **Contain** يحتوى على(بداخل كل الشيء)
- **Consist of** يتكون من
- **Enclose** يرفق/يحيط ب

1- your responsibility will include making appointments on my behalf.
2- this essay contain a number of typing errors.
3- our school consists of three buildings .

4- my uncle is <u>enclosed</u> by a high wall.
5-he sent me a letter and <u>enclosed</u> his photo with it.

6-- reason for+n **- the reason that/why+ جمله**
the reason + - جمله +is that…….

1- she gave me no **<u>reason for coming</u>** late to the party.
2- he gave me no **<u>reason for his failure</u>**.
3- I want to know **<u>the reason why</u>** he refused my invitation.
4- **<u>the reason</u>** I like football **<u>is that</u>** it is a popular .

7-make **يأتى هذا الفعل فى الجمل بمعنى (يجعل)**
فاعل+make+ مفعول + صفه
فاعل+make+مفعول+in (بدون to)
فاعل+(be) make+to +inf

1- my son's getting the gold medal made me happy.
2- the police made the criminal admit everything.
3- the criminal was made to admit everything.

personal ***شخصى*** ***personnel*** ***شئون العاملين***

- I am going to tell her anything **<u>personal</u>**.
- For more information about the job , please contact the **<u>personnel</u>** manager.

9-connected to	متصل (بشيئ) يتصل مباشره بشيئ اخر مادى
connected with	مرتبط ب/له علاقه ب(معنويا)
contact	يتصل ب/ يتواصل مع

1- the printer is connected to the printer.
2-Doctors believe that a lot of disease are connected with pollution level.
3- Is there a phone number where I can contact you?

10-bully(n)	**بلطجى**	**bully(v)**	**يبلطج**
bully(….into)(v)	**يبتز/يساوم**	**bullying(n)**	**البلطجة**

We called the police to arrest the bullies.
Older children usually bully younger or weaker ones.
The manager bullied me to leave my job.
Bullying is a big problem in slums.

11-cheat (at/in)(v)	**يغش**	**cheat(v)**	**يخدع/يحتال على/يخون**
cheat(n)	**غشاش/نصاب**	**cheating(n)**	**غش /نصب**

- He used the mobile to cheat in the test.
- He was arrested as he cheated an old man out of his money.
- Don't trust this cheat.
- Cheating is a crime.

• address(n)	عنوان
• address(n)	خطبه رسميه/كلمه رسميه واضح /مباشر
• address(v)	يعنون/يضع عنوان
• address(to)(v)	يخاطب/يوجه حديث او طلب رسميا الى

1- He changed his address.
2- the prime minister's address was clear and direct.
3- He addressed the letter and send it by post.

4- Don't these tourists in France .they are English.

13-noticeboard(n) **لوحه اعلانات(فى الانجليزيه البريطانيه)**
bulletin board(n) **لوحه اعلانات فى الانجليزيه الامريكيه)**

1- You can find companies email on the **noticeboard**.
2- You can find companies email on the **bulletin** **board**.

4- الاسماء المفرده التى تعد يمكن ان تجمع وتسبق بأداه النكرة(a/an)

a car…….. cars   a dog…… dogs   an apple….apples
I have just seen **a** train.   A car costs **a** lot of money.
The child is playing in the garden.

14- الاسماء المفرده التى لا تعدلا تجمع ولا تسبق بأداة (a/an)

Meat cost**s** much money.
This milk is too hot, I can't drink **it**.
She bought much rice and wheat from the market.

Some
- (c) اسم يعد جمع
- (u) اسم لا يعد

وتستخدم فى (الإثبات – العرض – الاقتراح)

any
- (c) اسم يعد
- (u) اسم لا يعد

وتستخدم فى (النفى – السؤال)

- Let's have (**some** – any) tea .
- Would you like to listen to (**some** – any) music .
- Have you seen (some – **any**) person here ?
- I don't have (**any** – some) money .
- She has got (**some** – any) friends .

15-هناك بعض الأسماء تعد ولا تعد فى نفس الوقت حسب الجملة :

Countable (c) اسم يعد		Uncountable (u) اسم لا يعد	
a glass	كوب	glass	زجاج
a paper papers	جريدة مستندات	paper	ورق
an ice	أيس كريم	ice	ثلج
an iron	مكواة	iron	حديد
an onion	بصلة	onion	بصل
a coffee	فنجان قهوة	coffee	بن
a tea	كوب شاى	tea	شاى خام
a drink	مشروب	drink	مشرب
a business	شركة	business	عمل
a time	مرة	time	وقت
a light	لمبة	light	ضوء
a hair	شعرة	hair	الشعر عامة
an experience	موقف	experience	خبرة
a food	نوع من الطعام	food	طعام
a drink	نوع من الشراب	drink	شراب
a chicken	فرخة	chicken	لحم فراخ
an orange	برتقالة	orange	لون برتقالى/ البرتقال ككل

9-Choose the correct answer :

1- Would you like …………ice ? It's really tasty .
a) an b) no article c) no d) any

2- Can you make me ………coffee ?
a) any b) much c) a d) several

3- The price of …………….has increased .
a) iron b) an iron c) any iron d) many iron

4- I want to buy ……………light for this room .
a) an b) some c) much d) a

5- I can't forget …………..experience that I lived 3 years ago .
a) a b) an c) some d) many

6- This job needs ……………..experience .
a) a b) an c)no article d) many

7- How ……………. Coffees do you want .
a)many b)much c)a lot of d)a few

8- How …………….coffee do you want ?two cups
a)many b)much c)a lot of d)a few

9- I saw …………….in the soup
a)hair b) a little hairs c)a few hair d)a hair

Drill: Guess the NEW meaning of the underlined words:

1- The air conditioner cooled the air in the room. (…………….)
2- The carpenter joined the two pieces of wood with strong glue (…………….)
3- Too much coffee can produce unwanted side-effects. (…………….)
4- Dr. Ali has opened his practice, he has many patients (…………….)
5- I'm experiencing a lot of pain in my eyes. (…………….)
6- The point of the exercise is to learn the present simple. (…………….)
7- I'd like to discuss the first point in your essay. (…………..….)
8- The point of my pencil isn't sharp enough (…………….).
9-I loved my stay in Paris very much. (…………….)
10- What make of the car do you drive? - It's Toyota. (…………….)

Choose the correct answer

1. He just took it for……….that he would pass the exam.
a)graduated b)graded c)granted d)marked
2. I'm thinking of studying abroad . Really?........ .
a)cool b)call c)kill d)fool
3. A common interest in chess and politics brought them ……. .
a)apart b)together c)gather d)whether
4. After she scored the winning goal, Jana's……………carried her around the field.
a)referees b)rival c)teammates d)enemies
5. When you move to a new city, it can be hard to…………….friends.
a)create b-do c-invent d-make
6. There is …………….between pollution and the death of trees.
a-connection b-collection c-fiction d-pronunciation
7. Click this button to …………to the internet.
a-conceal b-contact c-connect d-collect
8. Adel is really……….because of all the problem he's having at the moment.
a-pressed b-stressed c-missed d-enjoyable
9. After two years of intimate ……., they announced that they had decided to get married.
a-friends b-friend c-friendship d-friendly

10. Janet's been under a lot of ………….since her mother's illness
a-happiness b-pleasure c-joy d-stress
11. His addiction has turned him into a ……...and a liar/
a-ship b-sheep c-heat d-cheat
12. Don't take it for …………that other students witll start a conversation.
a-gifted b-granted c-qualified d-stated
13. On applying for a job, you will need to give your address, and other………..data
a-personality b-personally c-personal d-persons
14. The coach of the team put the list of players up on the……….
a-beard b-bread c-noticeboard d-counter
15. Jenny was so shy that she found it difficult to make ………..at school.
a-bullies b-rivals c-enemies d-friends
16. We……….together researchers from three different universities to work on the project.
a-bought b-brought c-fought d-taught
17. If you went to a new school, you must find ways to……….with other people.
a-connect b-collect c-neglect d-respect
18. When I got to the airport, I found I had left my passport………..
a-ahead b-behind c-ashore d-alive
19. You can make new friends if you're nice to other people and start……with them.
a-presentation b-preservation c-conservation d-conversation
20. The island was beautiful, but I felt………..there.
a-only b-loneliness c-alone d-lonely
21. Tom tried to make friends to overcome his…………..
a-only b-loneliness c-alone d-lonely
22. My father gave me some good……….to avoid smoking.
a-devices b-device c-advice d-advise
23. If you are suffering from…………., you may be more likely to become ill.
a-stress b-joy c-press d-pleasure
24. There's still time to a ………..before the end of the programme
a-logging-in b-coming in c-entrance d-phone-in
25. She has a ……….habit of calling people late at night.
a-good b-nasty c-nice d-wonderful
26. Moving to a new house is very…………experience.
a-pressed b-stressed c-stress d-stressful
27. The ………..of the show is famous actor, so all people watch it.
a-guest b-host c-post d-lost
28. It is not always easy to …………new friends when you move to a new school.
a-do b-invent c-make d-bake
29. You will know people better if you……….time with them at a club.
a-mend b-send c-spend d-bend
30. It is also a good idea to ……….a sport that you like.
a-advise b-have c-make d-do
31. You can go ……………to find out the scores of today's matches.
a-guideline s b-underline c-online d-offline
32. Your teachers can also give………..to help you.
a-devices b-device c-advise d-advice

33. The river is……… mainly by smaller species of fish.
a-polluted b-populated c-prevented d-graduated
34. It takes hours of ……..to learn to play the guitar.
a-practise b-practice c-practical d-practically
35. We must give students the opportunity to…………….their speaking skills.
a-object b-license c-refuse d-practice
36. We are going to see a movie tonight. Would like to …………us?
a-join b-move c-remove d-prove
37. I've been living on my……….for four years now.
a-drown b-dawn c-own d-owner
38. They have the same interests, they seem to get……….with each other.
a-alone b-long c-a long d-along
39. As……………….as I'm concerned, that was the best film of the year.
a-far b-farther c-high d-long
40. He travelled abroad, leaving the children …………with their mother.
a-between b-along c-behind d-ahead
41. Companies are increasingly making use of social…..in order to market their goods.
a-medical b-made c-mad d-media
42. I'll send you my email address once I go…………..
a-offline b-online c-underline d-abroad
43. My parents' divorce had a big………………..on me.
a-affect b-effect c-effective effectively
44. Neglecting my study was starting to have a …………effect on my work.
a-preventive b-inventive c-positive d-negative
45. We brought……….researches from three different universities to work on the project.
a-out b-on c-together d-up
46. Please don't bother me. I'm busy……………my taxes.
a-to doing b-did c-to do d-doing
47. You've got to……..your problems to be able to solve them.
a-avoid b-neglect c-face d-space
48. India has a ……….. of more than one billion.
a-population b-pollution c-solution d-revolution

Grammar أدوات النكرة و المعرفة

في اللغة العربية : كى نجعل الاسم معرفة فإننا نضع الــ و إذا أردنا أن نجعل الاسم نكرة فإننا نحذف الــ .

في اللغة الانجليزية : كى نجعل الاسم معرفة فإننا نضع the و إذا أردنا أن نجعل الاسم نكرة فإننا نضع a /an

أدوات نكرة An a

a توضع أمام الاسم المفرد الذى يعد الذى يبدأ بصوت ساكن

an توضع أمام الاسم المفرد الذى يعد الذى يبدأ بصوت متحرك

كل الأصوات ساكنة ماعدا { a – e – o – u – I }

أمثلة :
a boy – a girl – a book – a pen
An apple – an elephant – an orange – an ice cream = an umbrella .

ركز جيدا أننا نتعامل مع أصوات و ليس حروف لذا لاحظ

A one – a European – a university – a use – a uniform – a united – a unique فريد
- an hour – an honest….. – an MP –

- He is an university student . " a "
- He is just an one in a group . " a "

و الآن علينا الإجابة على أربعة أسئلة

1-: متى نستخدم أدوات النكرة a – an و ليس the:-

1- قبل الاسم المفرد الذى يعد الذى يذكر للمرة الأولى . I saw (**a** – the) boy in the street

2- قبل التحدث عن وظائف الآخرين :- She is (**a** – the) doctor

3- قبل اسم مفرد يعد و قبلة صفة بمعنى :-

A – an + صفة + اسم مفرد يعد

- I saw (**a** – the) beautiful girl .

لأن الاسم جمع ولا يجوز وضع a Egypt carried out a lot of ~~a~~ great projects

4- قبل المركبات العددية للتجزئة مثل :-

- **A kilo of – a dozen of دستة من - a bottle of – a litter of – a pair of – a metre of**
- **– a hundred of – a ten of – a piece of – a bar of – a packet of – a bag of**

- Manar got married and gave (**a** – the) dozen of children .
- He bought (**a** – the) pair of shoes .
- Can you give me (**a** – the) piece of cake

- 3-قبل واحد من مجموعة

I met **a** player in AlAhli team .

متى لا نستخدم a - an

1- قبل اسم العلم " اسم شخص – اسم دولة – اسم شهرة – اسم يوم ....

- I went to (a – **No article** لا أداة) Cairo .
- I was born in (a – **No article**) March .

2- قبل الجمع .

- Egypt carried out (a – **No article**) projects .

3-: السؤال الثالث : متى نستخدم the :-

1- أمام الاسم الفريد من نوعه لا يوجد منه اثنين . أو فريد بالنسبة للمتحدثين

- The sun – the sky – the man – the world – the capital .
- A: where is your father ? B: he is in (**the** - No article) garden .

و يشذ عن ذلك كلمة space

2- أمام الاسم الذى يذكر للمرة الثانية في الجملة .

- I saw a boy ,(**the** – a) boy was tall .

3- أمام **أماكن** الترفيه و الخدمة

- The restaurant – the Cinema – the club – the theatre .
- I will eat in (**the** – a) restaurant .

اقصد بهذه الجملة فى المطعم الذى أتناول فيه دائما الوجبات لذا لاحظ

- There is (**a** – the) restaurant next to the bank لأنني اقصد به النكرة

4- قبل المخترعات مفرد بصفة عامة و كذلك الاكتشافات .

- The internet – the television – the femto second
- Bill invented (**the** – a) telephone .

و لكن ....!إذا كنت أتحدث عن الاختراع كجهاز نستخدم a / an مثل :-

- He bought (**a** – the) computer .

لأنى اقصد اشتريت جهاز واحد و ليس كل الاختراع . إذا كنت أتحدث عن الاختراع جمع لا تأخذ a – an – the بصفة عامة

- (the – a – **No article**) computers are vital .

بالنسبة لكلمة television إذا كنت أقصد البرامج لا تأخذ شيء أي مع الفعل watch .

- I watch (the – a – **No article**) television every day.

5- مع نوع أو فصيلة حيوان و نتحدث عنها ليس كحيوان إنما فصيلة

- (**the** – a) lion is a wild animal .
- I saw (**a**- an –the – no article)lion in the street

6- مع الأماكن المشهورة فى البلد و المنظمات .

- The pyramids – the sphinx – the European union – the UNESCO – the national bank

7- قبل الآلات الموسيقية بصفة عامة و عادة تسبق بـ play .

- He plays (**the** – a) guitar
- He bought **a lute**

و لكن إذا كنت اقصد به أنه واحدة فقط a – an

8- قبل صفات التفضيل est – most صفة

He is (**the** - No article) most polite boy here.
She is (**the** - No article) best girl here .

9- قبل تركيبة كلما – كما

- **The more /the ..er ...., the more /the …er**
- **The less .... , the less ....**

(**the** - No article) more you study – the more you get

10-قبل الاسم الذى يعرف برابط وصل

(**the** – a) man who I met was tall .
(**the** – a) woman who helped me was generous .

ركز فى الحتة دى يمكن حذفه ------------ فعل + فاعل + رابط وصل

(**the** – No article) girl I was talking about is my friend's sister.

11-قبل الدول المركبة أي مكتوب بها republic – states – kingdom – Emirates

- He is from (the – No article) U.S.A

12-قبل تركيبة

- **The east of – the west of – the south of – the north of – the middle ما عدا upper**

He lives in (**the** – No article) north of America .
He comes from (the – **No article**) upper Egypt .

13-قبل المحيطات – البحار – الأنهار – القنوات – الصحارى – الواحات
The Atlantic ocean – the Red sea – the Nile – the Suez canal – the Kalahari desert – the Siwa oasis

14-قبل الجبال – الجزر – البحيرات بشرط أن تكون جمع .
The Alps – the isles – the great lakes.

15-قبل صفة طبقة من طبقات المجتمع التصبح جمع مثل

The old	**الكبار**	**the young**	**الشباب**
The rich	**الأغنياء**	**the poor**	**الفقراء**
The talented	**الموهوبين**	**the gifted**	**المتفوقين**

16-قبل تركيبه in the morning – in the evening – the same – in the afternoon.

السؤال الرابع : متى لا نستخدم the

1-قبل الجمع بصفة عامة
(the- **No article**) people are good and evil (
☺(**the** – No article) people in my country are polite . **لأننا نتحدث عن ناس معينة**

2-قبل الاسم العلم (مادة دراسية – لغة – شخص-فصول السنة – أيام)
I like (the – **No article**) English very much .
He speaks (the – **No article**) Spanish .

و لكن لاحظ

(**the** – No article) English man who I met was tall .
The Ragabs – the Belals – the Hindys **أى عائلة هندى / عائلة بلال – عائلة رجب**

3-قبل اسم لا يعد بصفة عامة (مأكل – مشرب – مادة خام)
(the – **No article**) iron is a good conductor of heat .
(the – **No article**) meat is a good meal .
(**the** – No article) meat in the fridge is fresh .

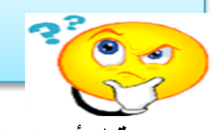
4- قبل الأنشطة سواء كانت سلبية أم إيجابية
(the – **No article**) smoking is a bad habit .
(the – **No article**) reading is a good thing .

5- مع الأماكن (school – hospital – prison) ← للغرض الذى بنيت من أجله((No article)
مع هذه الأماكن لغرض الزيارة ← **the**
He went to (the – **No article**) school to learn .
He went to (**the** – No article) school to visit a relative .
I go to (**bed** – the bed -)early every day **ركز في الجملة**

6- قبل الألعاب الرياضة
(the – **No article**) football is my favourite hobby

7- قبل أسماء القارات – الدول – و المدن – البلاد و العزب كمان
Africa – Egypt – Paris . ماعدا السابقة
the Sudan – the Congho – the Netherlands و لكن يشذ

8- قبل تركيبة Eastern – Southern – Northern
9- قبل ألقاب الأشخاص
Professor Zeweil = Zeweil the professor * President Obama =Obama the president.



10-قبل أسماء الوجبات بصفة عامة لا تأخذ **a – an – the**
I have (the – **No article**) lunch early every day نتحدث عن وجبه واحدة كل يوم
I had **a lunch** with him one day. نتحدث عن وجبه واحدة مرة واحدة
نتحدث عن وجبة محددة بزمن او رابط وصل
(**the** – No article) lunch which I had with her was good.

11- قبل الأسماء المجردة " الأسماء المعنوية "
(Honesty – democracy – beauty – happiness – sadness)
The beauty of the country / the honesty of the chairman ← و لكننا نقول

Exercises on Grammar:

1- My father is……………..doctor.
a-the b-no article c-a d-an
2- In fact, he's one of the………….best doctors in our town.
a-the b-no article c-a d-an
3- …………….town which I was born in is Ashmoun.
a-the b-no article c-a d-an
4- You shouldn't look at………..sun. it can damage your eyes.
a-the b-no article c-a d-an
5- Yesterday I found……….mobile phone in the road.
a-the b-no article c-a d-an
6- …………..Nile is the longest river in the world.
a-the b-no article c-a d-an
7- We live in…………..old house near to sea Nile.
a-the b-no article c-a d-an
8- When I leave school, I want to be………….tourist guide/
a-the b-no article c-a d-an
9- ……….mobile phone was invented in 1973.
a-the b-no article c-a d-an
10- Who is………………headmaster of this school, please?
a-the b-no article c-a d-an
11- We are spending our holiday in…………United Kingdom this summer.
a-the b-no article c-a d-an
12- We are spending our holiday in…………Britain this summer.
a-the b-no article c-a d-an
13- My father plays……….tennis every Sunday morning.
a-the b-no article c-a d-an
14- Few people have been to………..Himalayas.
a-the b-no article c-a d-an
15- Visitor: Where's the office, please? Girl: It's on……fifth floor.
a-the b-no article c-a d-an

16- Will you pick up...........book on floor?
a-the b-no article c-a d-an
17- My brother is..............fastest swimmer in our school.
a-the b-no article c-a d-an
18- On our trip to Spain, we crossed.............Atlantic Ocean.
a-the b-no article c-a d-an
19- When I was at school, I loved............Mathematics.
a-the b-no article c-a d-an
20- ....apples are good for you.
a-the b-no article c-a d-an
21- Look at...............apples on that tree.
a-the b-no article c-a d-an
22- We had dinner at.........most expensive restaurant in town.
a-the b-no article c-a d-an
23- This ring is made of.................gold.
a-the b-no article c-a d-an
24- My father works for.....................international company.
a-the b-no article c-a d-an
25- Mr Ali is ....accountant in a big company.
a-the b-no article c-a d-an
26- ....wood is used for making furniture.
a-the b-no article c-a d-an
27- Eman gave me a book and a novel, but I only read..........novel.
a-the b-no article c-a d-an
28- Hadeer likes playing...........guitar.
a-the b-no article c-a d-an
29- Nada's hobby is playing..........basketball.
a-the b-no article c-a d-an
30- This man works for eight hours..........day.
a-the b-no article c-a d-an
31- We've got............furniture, but we still need a table.
a-the b-no article c-a d-an
32- Can I have..........more juice, please?
a-the b-no article c-a d-an
33- He doesn't have any pens, but he has..........pencil.
a-the b-no article c-a d-an
34- Our teacher didn't give us..........homework yesterday.
a-the b-no article c-a d-an
35- A: Would you lend me..................money please? B: Sorry. I don't have ....
a-some b-any c-a d-an
36- My brother wants to buy............new shoes.
a-the b-no article c-a d-an
37- Excuse me, I need................information about the flight to Boaton
a-the b-no article c-a d-an
38- Mr. Smith has................questions that he wants to ask you.
a-the b-no article c-a d-an
39- Can you tell me how to get to.........cinema from here?
a-the b-no article c-a d-an
40- I moved to ....USA when I was 15 years old.
a-the b-no article c-a d-an

Chapter 4

hear (heard)	يسمع	expect	يتوقع
quietly	بهدوء	continue	يستمر
climb out of	يقفز من	go back	يعود
barrel	برميل	attack	يهجم / هجوم
join	ينضم الى / يلحق ب	immediately	فى الحال
sailors	بحارة	thought	فكرة
at the side of	على جانب من	count	يعد / يحسب
surprised	مندهش	rocky tops	قمم صخرية
crew	طاقم السفينة	shore	شاطئ
hills	تلال	smell	يشم / رائحة
close to	قريب من	diseases	امراض
map	خريطة	mutiny	يتمرد / تمرد
take….to	يأخذ......الى	mutineer	متمرد
excited to+ inf.	متحمس أن	as usual	كالعادة
point to	يشير الى	perhaps	ربما
frightened of	مرعوب من	plan	خطة / يخطط
trust	يثق / ثقة	fight	يتشاجر / مشاجرة
speak to	يتحدث الى	decide to	يقرر ان
terrible	فظيع	relax	يستريح
news	اخبار (اسم لا يعد)	gun	بندقية
express	يعبر عن	organise	ينظم
expression	تعبير	realise	يدرك
change	يغير / تغيير	make a mistake	يرتكب خطأ
glasses	نظارة	nearly	تقريبا
downstairs	الطابق الاسفل	hold(held) onto	يمسك فى
walk off	يخرج	branch	فرع
wrong	مخطئ	Jump out of	يقفز من على
right	على حق	pretty	جميلة
whistle	صفارة	a cloud of birds	سحابة طيور كثيرة
forever	للابد	follow	يتتبع / يتبع
crutch	عكاز	kill…with	يقتل....ب
hit	يضرب	knife	سكينة

Treasure Island Chapter 4

I heard people running to look at the island, and I quietly climbed out of the barrel. I then walked up to join the sailors at the side of the ship. We could see two low hills and one big one. The island was now very close.

سمعت أشخاصاً يجرون لكى ينظروا إلى الجزيرة ، وخرجت بهدوء من البرميل. مشيت بعد ذلك لكي انضم الى البحارة على جانب السفينة. استطعنا أن نرى اثنين من التلال المنخفضة وواحد كبير. كانت اليابسة الآن قريبة جدا.

"I've been here before," said Silver. "I know where the ship should stop."
"I have a map here," said Captain Smollett. "Can you take us to that place?"

قال سيلفر: "لقد كنت هنا من قبل". "أعرف أين يجب أن تتوقف السفينة".
قال الكابتن سموليت: " انا لدي خريطة هنا". "هل يمكنك أن تأخذنا إلى هذا المكان؟"

I saw that Silver was excited to take the map, but it was not the one with the treasure marked on it. "Yes, I can see it. You must go here," he said, pointing to a place on the map.

رأيت أن Silver كان متحمسًا لأخذ الخريطة ، لكنها لم تكن هي التي تحمل الكنز عليها.
"نعم ، أستطيع أن أرى ذلك. وقال "يجب أن تذهب هنا" ، مشيرًا إلى مكان على الخريطة.

Then he turned to me and said, "You'll love this island. You can swim and climb trees and walk up the hills!" I smiled at Silver, but inside I was very frightened of him now. I could not trust anything that he said.

ثم التفت إلي وقال: "ستحب هذه الجزيرة. يمكنك السباحة وتسلق الأشجار والمشي فوق التلال" !
ابتسمت لسيلفر ، لكن من داخلى كنت خائفًا منه الآن. لم أستطع ان اثق بأي شيء قاله.

I soon found Dr Livesy and quietly said to him, "I must speak to you, Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney. I have some terrible news."
Dr Livesy's expression did not change. He asked me to find his glasses downstairs and walked off to talk to Mr Trelawney and Smollett. I waited downstairs and soon the three men joined me.

سرعان ما وجدت الدكتور لايفسي وقلت له بهدوء ، "يجب أن أتحدث إليكما يا كابتن سموليت ومستر تريلاوني. لدي بعض الأخبار الرهيبة" .
تعبير الدكتور لايفسي لم يتغير. طلب مني أن أجد نظارته في الطابق السفلي ومشى للتحدث إلى السيد تريلاوني وسموليت. انتظرت في الطابق السفلي وسرعان ما انضم إليّ الرجال الثلاثة.

"What do you want to tell us?" asked Mr Trelawney. I told them everything that I had heard in the barrel. When I finished talking, they thanked me.

"ماذا تريد أن تخبرنا؟" سأل السيد تريلاوني.قلت لهم كل ما سمعته في البرميل. عندما انتهيت من الحديث ، شكروا لي

"Captain," said Mr Trelawney. "You were right and I was wrong. What shall we do?"

قال السيد تريلاوني "الكابتن". "لقد كنت على حق وكنت مخطئًا. ماذا يجب ان نفعل؟"

"I'm surprised too," said Captain Smollett. "They have worked hard and been a better crew than I expected. Now we must continue. We can't go back, or they might attack us immediately. I don't think that they will attack us until we find the treasure. Long Adel Silver did not find all of this crew, so some of the men are good men. We must wait, watch and attack them when they don't expect it."

قال الكابتن سموليت: "أنا مندهش أيضًا". لقد عملوا بجد وكانوا طاقمًا أفضل مما كنت أتوقع. الآن يجب أن نستمر. لا يمكننا العودة ، والا سوف يهاجموننا على الفور. لا اعتقد أنهم سوف يهاجموننا حتى نجد الكنز. لم يجد جون سيلفر كل هذا الطاقم ، لذلك بعض الرجال هم رجال طيبون. يجب أن ننتظرهم ونراقبهم ونهاجمهم عندما لا يتوقعون ذلك" .

"Jim can help us," said Dr Livesy. "The men all trust him. He can listen and find out who we can trust."

"يمكن أن يساعدنا جيم" ، قال الدكتور لايفسي. "الرجال يثقون به جميعًا. يمكنه الاستماع ومعرفة من يمكننا الوثوق به."

I did not like this thought. I counted the men that Silver did not find for the crew. There were seven from a crew of nineteen, and I was one of them.

لم يعجبني هذا الفكر. لقد عددت الرجال الذين لم يجدهم سيلفر للطاقم. كانوا سبعة من طاقم مكون من تسعة عشر ، وكنت أحدهم.

The next morning, the Hispaniola stopped close to the island. There were many trees, and above the trees I saw the rocky tops of the hills. Silver helped Captain Smollett to sail the boat closer to the shore. It was very hot and very quiet. It smelled like bad eggs. "This place is only good for diseases," said Silver.

في صباح اليوم التالي ، توقف هيسبانيولا بالقرب من الجزيرة. كان هناك العديد من الأشجار ، وفوق الأشجار رأيت قمم الصخور للتلال. ساعد سيلفر الكابتن سموليت على الإبحار في القارب أقرب إلى الشاطئ. كان الجو حارا جدا وهادئا للغاية. كانت رائحتها مثل البيض السيئة. قال سيلفر "هذا المكان جيد فقط للأمراض."

The crew worked hard on our journey to the island, but now they did not seem to want to work. I remembered Dr Livesy talking about a mutiny. Perhaps it was near. Only Silver worked as hard as usual. Later, Captain Smollett told us that he had a plan.

لقد عمل الطاقم بجد في رحلتنا إلى الجزيرة ، لكن الآن يبدو أنهم لا يريدون العمل. تذكرت الدكتور لايفسي يتحدث عن تمرد. ربما كان قريب. فقط سيلفر كان يعمل بجد كالمعتاد. بعد ذلك كابتن سموليت اخبرنا أن لديه خطة.

"Let's ask the men if they'd like to spend the afternoon on the island. If they go, we can take the ship. If they don't go, we know we need to fight them for the ship."

" هيا نسأل الرجال عما إذا كانوا يرغبون في قضاء فترة ما بعد الظهر في الجزيرة. إذا ذهبوا ، يمكننا أن نأخذ السفينة. إذا لم يذهبوا ، فنحن نعلم أننا بحاجة إلى قتالهم من أجل السفينة."

Mr Trelawney agreed. We decided to tell all the men we could trust about our plan and gave them all guns. Captain Smollett then told the crew that they could all have the afternoon on the island to relax, if they wanted to.

وافق السيد تريلاوني. قررنا إخبار جميع الرجال الذين يمكن أن نثق بهم بخطتنا وأعطيناهم جميعا أسلحة. ثم أخبر الكابتن سموليت الطاقم أنه يمكنهم جميعًا قضاء فترة بعد الظهر في الجزيرة للاسترخاء ، إذا أرادوا ذلك.

"When you hear a gun at the end of the day, it'll be time to come back," he said.
All the crew suddenly looked happy and they all agreed to go. Perhaps they thought that they could find the treasure immediately.

وقال "عندما تسمعوا صوت بندقية في نهاية اليوم ، فسوف يكون هذا وقت العودة."
فجأة بدا جميع أفراد الطاقم سعداء ووافقوا جميعًا ان يغادروا. ربما اعتقدوا أنهم يمكنهم العثور على الكنز فورا.

Captain Smollett asked Silver to organise the men. Six men would stay on the Hispaniola and thirteen would take the small boats to the shore. I realised that there were six of Silver's men on the ship. The men in our group would not be able to take the ship, so I decided I would go with Silver onto the island. I got on one of the boats quietly, but Silver saw me. Had I made a big mistake?

طلب كابتن سموليت من سيلفر ان ينظم الرجال. سيبقى ستة رجال على سفينة هيسبانيولا ويأخذ ثلاثة عشر القوارب الصغيرة إلى الشاطئ. أدركت أن هناك ستة من رجال سيلفر على متن السفينة. لن يتمكن الرجال في مجموعتنا من أخذ السفينة ، لذلك قررت أن أذهب مع سيلفر إلى الجزيرة. ركبت أحد القوارب بهدوء ، لكن سيلفر رآني. هل ارتكبت خطأً كبيراً؟

The boat I was in was fast, and we were nearly on the beach first when I held onto the branch of a tree and jumped out of the boat. I heard someone calling me, but I did not listen and began to run as fast as I could.

كان القارب الذي كنت فيه سريعًا ، وعندما كنا على الشاطئ تقريبًا أمسكت بفرع شجرة وقفزت من القارب. سمعت شخصًا ينادى على ، لكنني لم أستمع وبدأت أجري بأسرع ما يمكن.

When I stopped, I felt happy. Silver did not know where I was. This part of the island was open, with just a few trees. I could see the hills in front of me. As I walked, I saw pretty flowers, snakes and small birds.

عندما توقفت ، شعرت بالسعادة. لم عرف سيلفر أين كنت. كان هذا الجزء من الجزيرة مفتوحًا ، مع بعض الأشجار. استطعت رؤية التلال أمامي. بينما كنت أمشي ، رأيت أزهاراً وثعابين وطيور صغيرة جميلة.

Suddenly a cloud of birds flew into the sky and knew that something was coming towards me. I was correct, because I then heard people talking. I decided to hide behind some trees.

فجأة حلقت مجموعة من الطيور في السماء وعرفت أن هناك شيئًا ما قادم نحوي. كنت على صواب ، لأنني سمعت الناس يتحدثون. قررت الاختباء وراء بعض الأشجار.

I realised that one of the people was Silver, but I could not hear what he was saying. Soon the birds returned, and I knew that the men had gone. I told myself that it was my job to find out what these men were planning to do. So I decided to follow them, without them seeing me. After a few minutes, I saw Silver and another sailor talking near a beach.

أدركت أن أحد الأشخاص كان سيلفر ، لكنني لم أسمع ما كان يقوله. سرعان ما عادت الطيور ، وكنت أعرف أن الرجال قد ذهبوا. قلت لنفسي إن وظيفتي هي معرفة ما كان يخطط هؤلاء الرجال للقيام به. لذلك قررت اتباعهم دون أن يروني. بعد بضع دقائق ، رأيت سيلفر وبحارًا آخر يتحدث بالقرب من الشاطئ.

“I want you to join us, Tom, because I know you’re a good sailor. I’m telling you this to save you!” said Silver. “Silver,” Tom replied, “you’re a good man and you shouldn’t work with these pirates. I’d prefer to lose my hand than work with them!”

"أريدك أن تنضم إلينا ، توم ، لأنني أعلم أنك بحار جيد. قال سيلفر "أنا أقول لك هذا لانقذك"!

أجاب توم: "فضي" ، فأنت رجل طيب ويجب ألا تعمل مع هؤلاء القراصنة. أنا أفضل أن أفقد يدي من العمل معهم" !

I knew then that here was a man that we could trust. Then came news of another. I suddenly heard a terrible shout, then all was quiet.
“What was that?” asked Tom.

كنت أعرف حينئذ أنه هنا رجل يمكننا الوثوق به. ثم جاء خبر آخر. سمعت فجأة صراخًا رهيبًا ، ثم كان كل شيء هادئًا.

"ماذا كان ذلك؟" سأل توم.

Silver smiled and said “That? Oh, I think that was Alan.”
“Alan!” cried Tom. “He’s a good man. If your men have hurt him, then you are no friend of mine. I won’t help you!”

ابتسم سيلفر وقال "هذا؟ أوه ، أعتقد أنه كان آلان."

"آلان!" صاح توم. "إنه رجل صالح. إذا أذوه رجالك ، فأنت لست صديقًا لي. لن أساعدك" !

Tom began to walk away from Silver along the beach. Silver suddenly threw his crutch at Tom, and it hit him hard on the back. He fell to the ground, and before he could stand again, Silver killed him with a knife.

بدأ توم بالسير بعيدا عن الفضة على طول الشاطئ. ألقى الفضة فجأة عكازه على توم ، وضربه بشدة على ظهره. سقط على الأرض ، وقبل أن يتمكن من الوقوف مرة أخرى ، قتله سيلفر بسكين.

Silver now blew a whistle and I knew that more of his men would soon arrive on the beach. I was very frightened. I walked quietly back into the trees, then ran as quickly as I could.

اطلق سيلفر الآن صافرة وكنت أعرف أن المزيد من رجاله سيصلون قريباً إلى الشاطئ. كنت خائفا جدا. مشيت بهدوء خلف الأشجار ، ثم جريت بأسرع ما يمكن.

As I ran, I began to think. What could I do now? When we heard Captain Smollett's gun, could I go back to the beach to be with these men? If I did, I knew that they would kill me. I would have to stay on the island forever.

أثناء الجرى ، بدأت أفكر. ماذا يمكنني أن أفعل الآن؟ عندما سمعنا سلاح الكابتن سموليت ، هل استطيع ان اعود إلى الشاطئ لأكون مع هؤلاء الرجال؟ لو فعلت ، كنت أعرف أنهم سيقتلونني. سأضطر أن أبقى في الجزيرة إلى الأبد.

Exercise on Chapter (4)

1-When the car hit the man, he gave a loud…………..

(smile – smell – laugh – shout)

2-The refree الحكم blew his……and ended the match.

(ball – flag – whistle - shirt)

3-To……is to believe that someone is honest or will not do anything bad or wrong.

(blow – doubt – trust – lie)

4-A……is a part of a tree that grows out from the trunk الجذع and that has leaves and fruit growing from it.

(root – seed – branch – leaf)

5-A/An……….is an illness which affects a person, animal or plant.

(fight – expression – branch – disease)

6-To…….. is to rest or do something that is enjoyable. Especially after you have been working. **(mark – relax – fight – mutiny)**

7-My brother works in Al Ahly national bank, Minia………He is an accountant.

(Trunk – Bark – Branch – Seed)

8-The students will be very………..if I reward them for their great efforts.

(sorry – useless – sad – surprised)

9-Ali is one of my best friends. I …..him completely. تماما

(doubt – trust – realise – suspect)

10-The government must continue the…………against corruption.

(right – light – fight – tight)

11-After the goal, the referee………..and the game was over.

(cried – shouted – clapped –whistled)

12-I have a………..to be a doctor when I grow up.

(plane – plan – plain – plant)

Unit 5 communication

communication(n)	التواصل	connected	متصل	phishing	النصب الالكترونى
communicate(v)	يتواصل	connect	يتصل-يربط	phisher	المحتال
technology(n)	التكنولوجيا	connection	صلة- ارتباط	scam	يحتال- احتيال-نصب
technological(adj)	تكنولوجى	connective	رابط- ضام	scammer	محتال - نصاب
smart phone(n)	هواتف زكيه	the internet	الانترنت	scamming	احتيال- نصب
hack(v)	يقتحم حاسوب لسرقه معلومات	**app (application)**	تطبيق	personal details	تفاصيل شخصيه
hacked(adj)	مقرصن	security	الامن- الحمايه	password	كلمه المرور
hacker(n)	قرصان حاسوب	secure	آمن- منيع	lock	يغلق- يقفل
uploading(n)	تحميل للانترنت	locked	مغلق- مقفول	hacking(n)	قرصنه الكترونيه
upload	يحمل	embarrassing	حرج- محرج	hackery (n)	الاختراق الحاسوبى
cyber bullying	التنمر الالكترونى	bank account	حساب بنكى	download(v)	يحمل- ينزل
Cyber bully	متنمر عبر الانترنت	realize	يدرك	downloading(n)	تحميل- تنزيل
websites	مواقع الكترونيه	anti-virus software	برمجيات مضاده للفيروسات	click(v)	ينقر نقره خفيفه
furious	غاضب	fight	يتشاجر	link(n-v)	رابط-يربط
crazy	مجنون	social media accounts	حسابات وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى	malware(n)	برمجيات خبيثه- برامج ضارة
spade	مجرفه- معزقه	property	بشكل مناسب	posting photos(n)	رفع الصور على الانترنت
leader	قائد - زعيم	comment	تعليق-يعلق	scary	مرعب
satnav	نظام الملاحه الفضائيه	posts	منشورات	imagine	يتخيل
flexible	مرن	horrible	فظيع- مريع	enough	كاف
advert	اعلان	teenager	مراهق	businesses	شركات
form	استمارة	rude	وقح	power station	محطة طاقة
excited	متشوق	bully	يتنمر- يبلطج	cause	سبب
employer	موظف	google	يبحث على جوجل	security	أمن
no longer	لم يعد	machine	آلة	hospitals	مستشفيات
		experts	خبراء	illegally	بشكل غير قانونى
develop	يتطور	believe	يصدق- يعتقد	devices	اجهزة
developed	متقدم	heating	حرارة	recognize	يدرك-يتعرف على
developing	نامى	bins	صناديق	comments	تعليقات
under develop	متخلف	driverless car	سيارة بلا سائق	collect	يجمع
control	يحكم - يتحكم	link	يربط-رابط	petrol	بنزين
lighting	انارة	advert	اعلان	roads	طرق
(be) able to	قادر على	electric	كهربى	criminals	مجرمون
empty	فارغ-يفرغ	safe	آمن	organizations	منظمات
worldwide	فى كل انحاء العالم	system	نظام	major	هائل - كبير
laptop	لاب توب-	**Particular** •	خاص - معين	remove	يزيل-يحذف
Flights	رحلات طيران	Safety	امان سلامه	Document	وثيقه-مستند
science	علم	recent	حديث-جديد	Museum	متحف
survey	دراسه-مطالعه	Theatre	مسرح	Trick	يخدع
Possibility	امكانيه-احتمال	dishonest	غير امين-خائن		

Definitions

anti-virus	a software that removes unwanted programs from a computer.
app	a computer programme is designed to perform / do specific functions.
click	to press a button on a computer mouse in order to choose something from the screen that you want the computer to do.
communication	a system to send and recieve information
connected	when more then one thing is linked or joined.
Cyber bullying	Sending messages online to worry or frighten someone.
downloading malware	Putting software from the internet that will damage it.
internet	A worldwide computer network.
hack	When a computer system is broken into illegally.
link	A place in an electric document that take you to another page or website.
lock	What you can do to stop another people using your phone or social media account.
phishing	Trying to trick a person into giving information over the internet to take money from them.
scam	A dishonest plan to steal money.
security	Protection of a place or a person
Smartphone	A device that can connect to the internet
technology	The use of science to create devices for everyday use.
Uploading personal details	Copying information such as your address and phone number to the internet.

Collections

check	my satnav	اتحقق من التوجيه بالقمر الصناعي	**look**	heavy	تبدو ثقيلة
do	wrong	يخطئ	**look**	like	يبدو كأنه/ يشبه
get	money	يحصل علي مال	**look**	right	يبدو علي ما يرام
give	personal details	يعطي تفاصيل شخصيه	**stay**	safe	يبقي بأمان
give	a presentation	يقوم بعرض تقديمي	**study**	online	يدرس عبر الانترنت
go	online	يدخل علي الانترنت	**take**	photos	يلتقط الصور
make	a decision	يتخذ قرار	**win**	a prize	يفوز بجائزه
make	life better	تجعل الحياه افضل	**write**	a blog	يكتب منشور في مدونه

Synonyms

advert	اعلان	advertisement / ad
app	تطبيق	application
book	يحجز	reserve
malware	برمجيات خبيثة	malicious software
recent	حديث	new/ modern/ late
satnav	الملاحه بالقمر الصناعي	satellite navigation
scam	احتيال - غش	fraud / trick

Antonyms

advantages	مزايا	disadvantages	عيوب- مساوئ
	صحيح	incorrect	غير صحيح

download	تنزيل- يحمل من الانترنت	upload	الرفع- يرفع علي الانترنت
honest	امين	dishonest	غير امين-مخادع – يفتح
lock	قفل	unlock	يفتح
major	كبير -هام – رئيسي	minor- little – unimportant	صغير- غير هام
online	متصل بالأنترنت – علي الانترنت	offline	غير متصل بالأنترنت
security	الامن	danger- insecurity	الخطر – انعدام الامان
send	يرسل	receive	يستقبل
similar	متشابه	different	مختلف

Prefixes مقاطع بادئة

anti-	ضد	anti-virus antibiotic	مكافح الفيروسات مضاد حيوي
cyber-	متعلق بالحواسيب وتكنولوجيا المعلومات	cyber bullying cyber-crime	التنمر الالكتروني الجريمة الالكترونية
dis-	تكون العكس	dishonest	غير امين-مخادع
down-	اسفل	downstairs	بالطابق الاسفل
down-	من الانترنت	download	تنزيل – يحمل من الانترنت
mal-	سئ – خبيث- مصاب	malware	البرمجيات الخبيثة
self-	الذات – ذاتي	self-management	إدارة الذات
up-	اعلي	upstairs	بالطابق العلوي
up-	الي الانترنت	upload	الرفع- يرفع علي الانترنت

Suffixes مقاطع ناهية

-ing	تكون اسم/ صفة	Cyberbullying (n) Embarrassing (adj)	التنمر الالكتروني محرج
-ise / -ize	تكون فعل	Summarise / summarize	يلخص
-ive	تكون صفة	Creative	مبدع – خلاق
-ment	تكون اسم	Management	إدارة
-ology/ -logy	تكون اسم له علاقة بالعلم او التكنولوجيا	Technology	التكنولوجيا

Language Notes

- click (n) **نقره – صوت طقطقه**

-With a single click on the mouse, you can get the information you need.

-The door shuts with a click.

لاحظ التعبيرات الاتية:

–at the click of the mouse **بسرعه جدا / في غمضه عين**

–shut/ close – with a click **يحدث صوت تكة عند القفل**

-click (on) (v) **ينقر- يحدث صوت طقطقه**

-I clicked on the link but it did not open.

communicate (with) (v) **يتواصل – يتصل**

-People from all over the world communicate with each other using emails.

communicate … to **يبلغ.....لـــ / ينقل.....الي**

-The manager communicated the decisions to the secretary by email.

communicate (to) (v) **يعدي / ينقل مرض**

-His flu communicated to all his friends.

communication اتصال/ تواصل – القدره علي التواصل

-Ayman's good communication makes him successful.

لاحظ التعبيرات التاليه:

- –be in communication with يكون علي تواصل مع

a means of communication وسيله اتصال او تواصل
–a lack of communication انعدام التواصل
-poor communication علاقة او تواصل ضعيف
–direct communication اتصال مباشر
–establish communication with يقيم علاقات مع
-communication skills مهارات التواصل

***كلمة (communications) تعني وسائل التواصل مثل الانترنت والراديو والتليفزيون وكذلك الطرق والسكك الحديدية وبهذا المعني فهي جمع دائما:**

-Modern communications help us learn and work from home.

***download (v) ينزل ملف من علي الانترنت** ***upload (v) يرفع ملف علي الانترنت**

–Sama downloaded some educational videos from EXB. بنك المعرفه المصري
-He has uploaded some files on Google Drive.

download (n) ملف منزل من علي الانترنت **upload (n) ملف مرفوع علي الانترنت**

-I keep the downloads in a folder called (Internet files).
-Some websites pay you money for your uploads.

downloading (n) التنزيل من الانترنت **uploading (n) الرفع علي الانترنت**

-Downloading files from the internet takes time than uploading them.

لاحظ التعبيرات التاليه:

–download …from ينزل من **–download to / onto ينزل الي**
–upload….to يرفع علي

–hack (into) (v) **يخترق /يقرصن (يحاول سرا الوصول الي او تغيير المعلومات علي اجهزه الغير**
-She was able to hack the password.
–hack / hacking (n) **عمليه اختراق اجهزه الكمبيوتر (تهكير)**
-You need to protect your laptop against hack.
hack (n) **سياسي مغمور / كاتب غير محترف**
-The meeting was full of hacks.
–hacker (n) **قرصان (هاكر)**
-I don't know how the hacker could get into the system.

link (v) **يربط-يوصل**
-Friendship links Mr Nasser and me. -This road links Cairo to Alexandria.
link……to/ with (v) **يربط ......بـــ**
-Friendship links me to / with Mr Nasser.
link…..together (v) **يربط....معا**
Friendship links Mr Nasser and me together.
link /linkage (between….and…..) (n) **رابط/ علاقه بين......و.......**
-Friendship is the link between Mr Nasser and me.
link (n) **رابط (لصفحه او موقع علي الانترنت)**
-I will send you the link of my blog.

password (n) **كلمه السر – كلمه المرور**
-You need to enter your password to check your email.
password – protected (n) **محمي باستخدام كلمه المرور**
-All the data on the central computer are password-protected.

lock (v) **يقفل – ينقفل**
-I locked the front door. – the front door is locked.
be locked in / into **مقيد بـ**
-The player was locked into a three- year contract.
lock …. In….. **يحبس ……في…….**
–The policeman locked the criminals in a cell.
lock …..out **يحجز…… خارج**
-I am locked out because I have lost my keys.
lock + subject+ up/ away **يسجن…..**
-the policeman locked the criminals up.
-the policeman locked up the criminals.
lock+ شيئ + up/ away **يضع…..في مكان آمن**
-my mother locks up/ away her jewellery in the safe.
=My mother locks her jewellery up/ away in the safe.
lock (n) **القفل**
-In hotels, there is a lock on each door.
locked (adj) **مقفول**
-You can't enter the office. The door is locked.

phishing (n) **الاحتيال او النصب الالكتروني (خداع الناس للاستيلاء علي اموالهم)**
-He was arrested for phishing.
phisher (n) **نصاب /محتال عبر الانترنت**
-He was arrested because he was a phisher.

scam (n) **عمليه نصب او احتيال / غش**
-There was no flat for sale. It was just a scam.
scam (med) (v) **ينصب علي – يغش**
-It is easy for evil people to scam simple people.
scammer (n) **نصاب – محال – غشاش** -Don't believe him. He is a scammer.

secure (d) (v) **يحمي – يؤمن**
-The police secure citizens and their property.
secure (d) (v) **يضمن (يستخدم شئ كضمان)**
-He used his farm to secure the loan.
secure (adj) **آمن – محمي** **insecure** **في خطر / غير محمى**
-Your money is secure in the bank.
security (n) **الامن – التأمين** **insecurity** **انعدام الامن**
-The security forces protected the building.

software (n) **برنامج حاسوبي (كلمه لا تعد)**
-I downloaded the new software.
لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التاليه:
-install a software يثبت برنامج anti-virus software برنامج مكافح للفيروسات
-a piece of software برنامج

scam **نصب/ احتيال (للاستيلاء علي اموال الغير)**
-The police has warned people about internet and phone scam.
spam **رسائل البريد الالكتروني التي تحتوي علي اعلانات غير مرغوب فيها**
-I don't know how to delete all the spam

technology (n) التكنولوجيا (الآلات والمعدات والاساليب التي تعتمد علي التطور العلمي والحاسوبي
-Modern technology has made life easy.
لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظيه التاليه:
information technology (IT) تكنولوجيا المعلومات
advanced technology التكنولوجيا المتطوره
digital technology التكنولوجيا الرقميه
advances/ developments in technology التطور التكنولوجي
technologist (n) اخصائي /خبير تكنولوجيا
-In our school, Mr Mohamed Omar is a real technologist.
technological (adj) تكنولوجي – متعلق بالتكنولوجيا
-Life has become faster thanks to technological development

advertisement / advert / ad إعلان(كلمه عامه)
-Don't believe adverts. Ask people who have already bought the products.
commercial إعلان (في التلفزيون / الراديو)
-This actress started in commercials.
trailer إعلان عن فيلم
-This web page is full of trailers.
promotion حملة دعائية (للترويج لمنتج معين)
-The company spent 2 million dollars on promotions for the new product.
announcement إعلان/تنبيه (نشر تنبيهات – تعليمات – تحذيرات – قرارات)
-We are waiting for the announcement about the decisions.

virus فيروس (كائن دقيق يسبب المرض)
-He is infected with AIDS virus.
virus فيروس إلكتروني (يسبب ضرر للاجهزة الحاسوبية)
-A virus has destroyed the data on my tablet.
anti-virus مكافح فيروسات (برنامج لإزالة البرامج الضارة)
-Don't trust a free anti-virus.
malware البرمجيات الخبيثة(برنامج يقوم بتدمير واتلاف اجهزة الحاسب والهواتف الذكية)
-A malware is a malicious software
hacker قرصان انترنت(شخص يخترق خصوصية اجهزة الكمبيوتر والبرامج الخاصة بالاخرين)
-A hacker has deleted the data from the central computer.

app = application تطبيق (برنامج يقوم بعمل معين علي الكمبيوتر او الهاتف)
-Google play is full of free apps/ applications.
application طلب التحاق (بنادب او جامعة او وظيفة......الخ)
-To join this club, fill in this application form.

communicate يتصل / يتواصل (عن طريق اللقاء / التلفزيون /الرسائل)
-I usually communicate with my friends by phone.
contact يتصل بــ/ يتواصل مع (عن طريق التلفزيون- الرسائل) لطلب او اعطاء معلومة
-When I saw the smoke, I contacted the fire brigade.

security الامن / التأمين (يتعلق بحماية الاشخاص والممتلكات)
-The match was postponed for security reasons.

safety الامان (عدم الخوف وعدم وجود خطر)
-The airline is taking steps to ensure safety on its aircraft.

برنامج حاسوبي (يؤدي غرض معين علي الكمبيوتر او الهاتف الذكي)
software
-I bought this antivirus software.
hardware مكونات / اجزاء/ ادوات (الحاسب او غيره)
-I need some kitchen hardware.

electric كهربي (تصف كل شئ يعمل او ينتج كهرباء)
/ guitar / generator / shock اسلاك / wires تيار light / current
-She has bought an **electric** piano.
electrical كهربى (تصف كل من يعمل فى الكهرباء او له علاقة بالكهرباء)
electrical appliances / equipment / power / storm
-Hassan works as an **electrical** engineer.

Exercises on vocabulary

(1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Communication is no longer about people talking to one ……………
a – else **b – other** **c – others** **d – another**
2. Speech is the fastest method of ……………between people.
a – communication **b – communicative** **c – connection** **d – communicate**
3. ……………stands for the internet of things.
a – SOS **b – USA** **c – IOT** **d – UN**
4. ……………believe that everyone will be connected to IOT in a few years
a – Teachers **b – Doctors** **c – Experts** **d – Engineers**
5. ……………is developing so fast
a – Technology **b – A technology** **c – The technology** **d – Technological**
6. Cars can already connect ……………the internet using smart phones
a – with **b – to** **c – of** **d – on**
7. The word smart is the synonym of ……………
a – stupidity **b – fool** **c – intelligence** **d – foolish**
8. ……………is a device that can connect to the internet
a – Smartphone **b – A mixer** **c – A radio** **d – An Axe**
9. A ……………car is driven electronically without a human driver
a – cart **b – ambulance** **c – driverless** **d – carriage**
10. The ……………on my mobile help me to choose what I want
a – photos **b – apps** **c – pictures** **d – images**
11. I will drive to the school to ……………the children
a – correct **b – connect** **c – contact** **d – collect**
12. All the driverless car will be ……………
a – electrical **b – electrician** **c –electric** **d –electricity**
13. The electric cars will be good ……………the environment because it causes no pollution.
a – to **b – at** **c – for** **d – against**
14. The electric car is ……………cleaner than petrol ones
a – few **b –much** **c –more** **d – many**
15. Experts believe that our roads will be ……………as there will be fewer accidents

a –dangerous b –dangerous c – save d – safer

16. Many people don't think IOT is safe enough ……………

a – already b – yet c – not d – never

17. Computers ……………information about people and businesses-

a – collect b – commit c – connect d – comet

18. Internet Criminals…………into organisations like hospitals , airports and power stations

a – hijack b – hate c – hack d – lack

19. Criminal ……………major security problems to these organisations

a – reason b – cause c – save d – relieve

20. ……………is the use of science to create devices for everyday use

a – Tourism b – Terrorism c – Technology d – Biology

21. When more than one thing is joined or linked means ……………

a – connected b – collected c –corrected d – offline

22. The internet is a worldwide computer ……………

a – work b – wires c – ropes d – network

23. An ……………is a computer programme.

a – app b – apparatus c – appearance d – parrot

24. To……………is When a computer system is broken into illegally

a – hide b – hack c – pack d – lake

25. Egypt is well-known for its safety and ……………

a – secure b – safe c – security d –secretive

26. I have a cool new ……………that helps me learn English words on my smart phone

a – internet b – technical c – image d – app

27. Oh no someone has tried to ……………into my new computer

a – connect b – hook c – hack d – hit

28. ……………with my friends is really important to me

a – Connected b – Security c – Communication d – Safety

29. Leila's parents have bought her all the latest……………a computer . a mobile and a tablet

a – safety b – technology c – communication d –connection

30. Look at this……………the phone company is going to introduce a flexible mobile-

a – advert b – advertise c – advantage d – addition

31. ……………are the people who hurt or cause problem to the internet users.

a – Cyberbullying b – Cyper-cafe c –Cyper-net d – Spiderman

32. There is a good song on the internet. It needs ……………

a – uploading b – downloading c – overloading d – loading

33. Teenagers are not always careful about……………their personal details

a – downloading b – loading c – uploading d – overloading

34. My computer begins to restart by itself. I think it is harmed by a ……………

a – ware b – worms c –insects d – maleware

35. ……is tricking people by getting them to give their identity . bank account numbers ,etc

a – Phishing b –Fishing c – Surfing d – Revising

36. The post office is on your way , ……………this letter form me , please.

a – post b – posting c – past d – supposing

37. When I use the internet , I find advertisement asking for personal details .It is a ………

a – scan b –scar c – scam d – span

38. You shouldn't upload your ……………details on websites you don't trust.

a – public b –unimportant c – trivial d – personal

39. You should use a strong…………..which can't be discovered easily

a – password b – passport c – pass way d –keyword

40. 3I am ashamed because she has put me in an …………..situation

a – nice b – good c – embarrassing d – remarkable

41. To protect your computer ,you should have a strong …………..virus software.

a – aunt b – anti- c – embarrassing d – onto

42. I sometimes pay for my goods using my …………..card

a – cheque b – cash c – credit d – carrot

43. Don't annoy your Facebook friends and your …………..should be polite.

a – comments b – letters c – paragraphs d – essays

44. It was a scam so my dad was furious because they stole money from his bank ………..

a – office b – manager c – account d – count

45. 4I chat with my friends on the internet when they are …………..

a – in line b –by line c – offline d – online

46. Is it difficult to …………..anything from the internet?

a – delete b – add c – upload d –post

47- The officer asked me about the…………. Of the accident.

a-details b-organisations c-offers d-networks

48- I think a ………..car is not safe to travel in.

a-modern b-driverless c-strong d-big

49- New laws have been …………..to stop cyberbullying.

a-taken b-warned c-done d-introduced

50- I connected the charger……..my laptop.

a-on b-about c-of d-to

51- No one has ever hacked………….my computer.

a-off b-into c-for d-of

52- To join this club fill in this …………..

a-programme b-application c-malware d-bucket

53- My father refused to use the family house to………..my brother's loan from the bank.

a-borrow b-lend c-secure d-endanger

54- Saudi Arabia busy military ……………..like tanks and missiles from the USA.

a-software b-hardware c-presentation d-prediction

55- The suffix …………means the study of something especially something **scientific**.

a- -ist b- -ise c- -ology d- -ment

56- This research has many practical ……….

a-evidence b-managements c-communications d-applications

57- The offer …………only to new members.

a-shares b-applies c-develops d-blogs

58- This webpage is full of job……………i found my current job here.

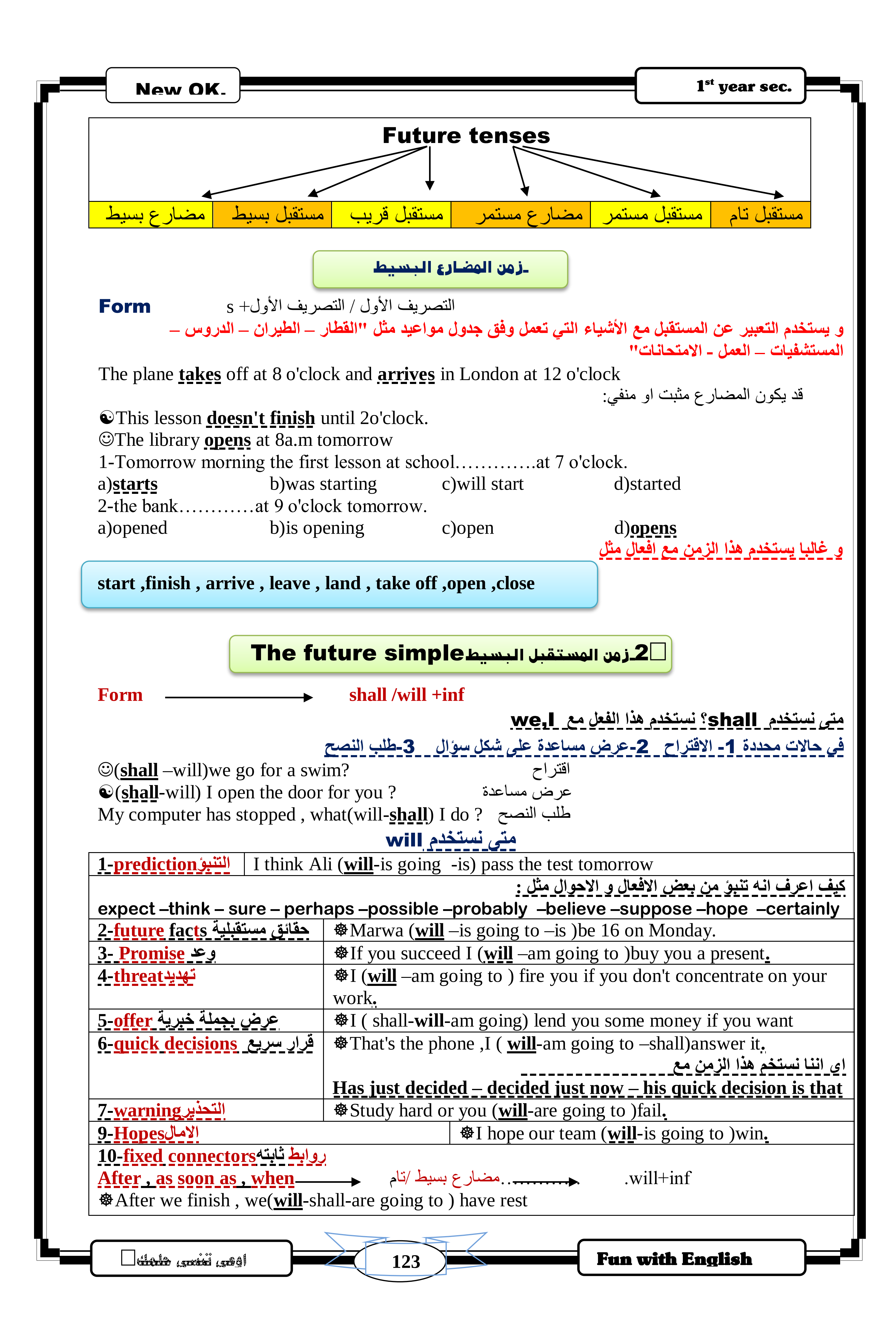
a-anti-virus b-malware c-adverts d-sat-nav

59- To protect your data and privacy, you need a strong……………

a-hacker b-antivirus c-malware d-blog

60- Self-…………is necessary to the success of any person.

a-manage b-manager c-managed d-management



Future tenses

مضارع بسيط	مستقبل بسيط	مستقبل قريب	مضارع مستمر	مستقبل مستمر	مستقبل تام

-زمن المضارع البسيط

Form التصريف الأول / التصريف الأول+ s

و يستخدم التعبير عن المستقبل مع الأشياء التي تعمل وفق جدول مواعيد مثل "القطار – الطيران – الدروس – المستشفيات – العمل - الامتحانات"

The plane **takes** off at 8 o'clock and **arrives** in London at 12 o'clock

قد يكون المضارع مثبت او منفي:

☯This lesson **doesn't finish** until 2o'clock.

☺The library **opens** at 8a.m tomorrow

1-Tomorrow morning the first lesson at school…………at 7 o'clock.

a)**starts** b)was starting c)will start d)started

2-the bank…………at 9 o'clock tomorrow.

a)opened b)is opening c)open d)**opens**

و غالبا يستخدم هذا الزمن مع افعال مثل

start ,finish , arrive , leave , land , take off ,open ,close

The future simple 2ـزمن المستقبل البسيط

Form → **shall /will +inf**

متى نستخدم **shall**؟ نستخدم هذا الفعل مع **I,we**

في حالات محددة **1**- الاقتراح **2**-عرض مساعدة على شكل سؤال **3**-طلب النصح

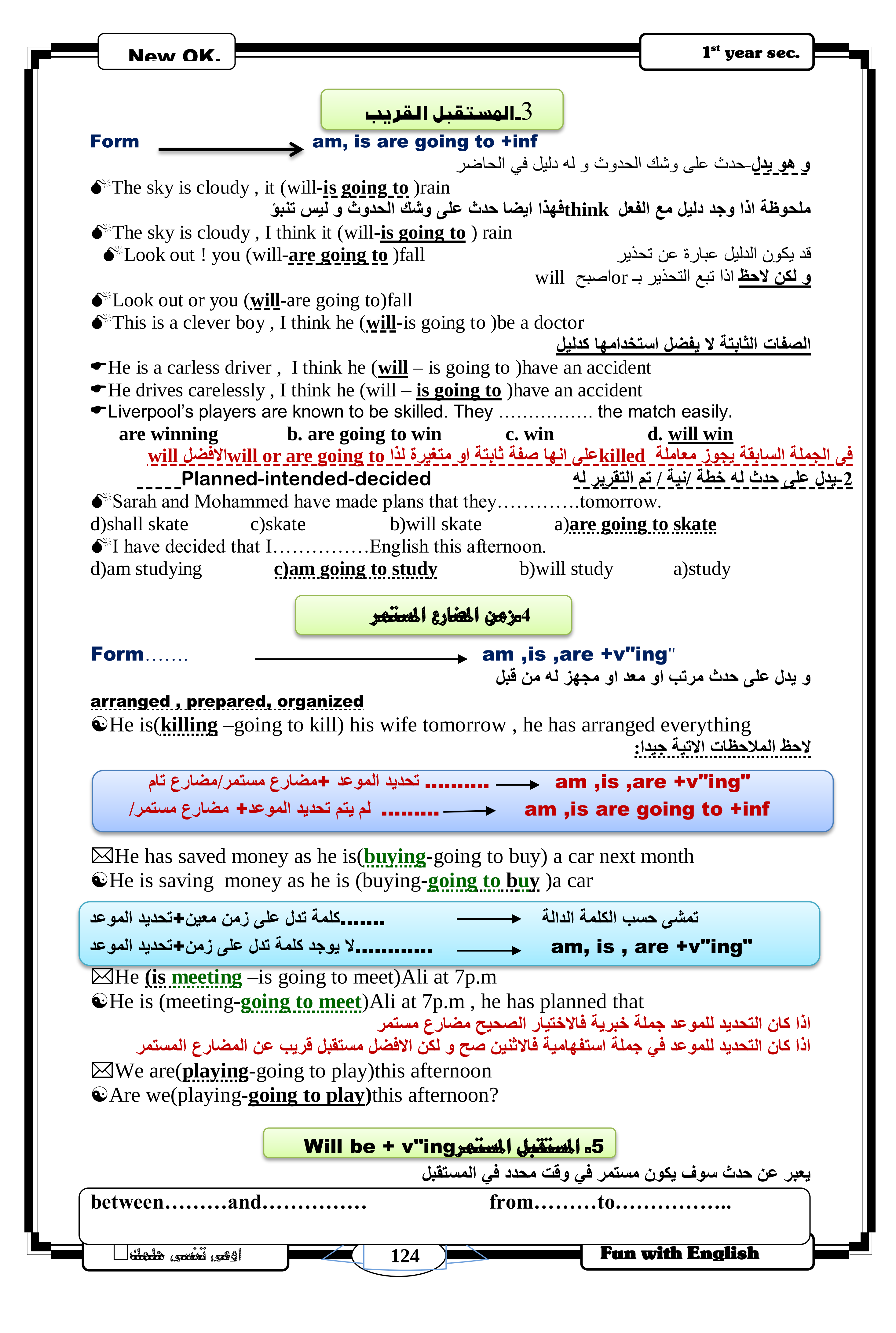
☺(**shall** –will)we go for a swim? اقتراح

☯(**shall**-will) I open the door for you ? عرض مساعدة

My computer has stopped , what(will-**shall**) I do ? طلب النصح

متى نستخدم **will**

1-prediction التنبؤ	I think Ali (**will**-is going -is) pass the test tomorrow
كيف اعرف انه تنبؤ من بعض الافعال و الاحوال مثل : expect –think – sure – perhaps –possible –probably –believe –suppose –hope –certainly	
2-future facts حقائق مستقبلية	❁Marwa (**will** –is going to –is)be 16 on Monday.
3- Promise وعد	❁If you succeed I (**will** –am going to)buy you a present.
4-threat تهديد	❁I (**will** –am going to) fire you if you don't concentrate on your work.
5-offer عرض بجملة خبرية	❁I (shall-**will**-am going) lend you some money if you want
6-quick decisions قرار سريع	❁That's the phone ,I (**will**-am going to –shall)answer it. اي اننا نستخدم هذا الزمن مع **Has just decided – decided just now – his quick decision is that**
7-warning التحذير	❁Study hard or you (**will**-are going to)fail.
9-Hopes الامال	❁I hope our team (**will**-is going to)win.
10-fixed connectors روابط ثابتة After , as soon as , when → مضارع بسيط /تام.……→ .will+inf ❁After we finish , we(**will**-shall-are going to) have rest	



3ـالمستقبل القريب

Form → **am, is are going to +inf**

و هو يدل-حدث على وشك الحدوث و له دليل في الحاضر

The sky is cloudy , it (will-**is going to**)rain

ملحوظة اذا وجد دليل مع الفعل **think** فهذا ايضا حدث على وشك الحدوث و ليس تنبؤ

The sky is cloudy , I think it (will-**is going to**) rain

Look out ! you (will-**are going to**)fall

قد يكون الدليل عبارة عن تحذير

و لكن لاحظ اذا تبع التحذير بـ or اصبح will

Look out or you (**will**-are going to)fall

This is a clever boy , I think he (**will**-is going to)be a doctor

الصفات الثابتة لا يفضل استخدامها كدليل

He is a carless driver , I think he (**will** – is going to)have an accident

He drives carelessly , I think he (will – **is going to**)have an accident

Liverpool's players are known to be skilled. They ……………. the match easily.

are winning b. are going to win c. win d. **will win**

في الجملة السابقة يجوز معاملة killed على انها صفة ثابتة او متغيرة لذا will or are going to والافضل will

2-يدل على حدث له خطة /نية / تم التقرير له ____**Planned-intended-decided**

Sarah and Mohammed have made plans that they…………tomorrow.

d)shall skate c)skate b)will skate a)**are going to skate**

I have decided that I…………..English this afternoon.

d)am studying **c)am going to study** b)will study a)study

4ـزمن المضارع المستمر

Form……. → **am ,is ,are +v"ing"**

و يدل على حدث مرتب او معد او مجهز له من قبل

arranged , prepared, organized

He is(**killing** –going to kill) his wife tomorrow , he has arranged everything

لاحظ الملاحظات الاتية جيدا:

am ,is ,are +v"ing"	← .... تحديد الموعد +مضارع مستمر/مضارع تام
am ,is are going to +inf	← .... لم يتم تحديد الموعد+ مضارع مستمر/

He has saved money as he is(**buying**-going to buy) a car next month

He is saving money as he is (buying-**going to buy**)a car

تمشى حسب الكلمة الدالة	← ....كلمة تدل على زمن معين+تحديد الموعد
am, is , are +v"ing"	← ....لا يوجد كلمة تدل على زمن+تحديد الموعد

He (**is meeting** –is going to meet)Ali at 7p.m

He is (meeting-**going to meet**)Ali at 7p.m , he has planned that

اذا كان التحديد للموعد جملة خبرية فالاختيار الصحيح مضارع مستمر

اذا كان التحديد للموعد في جملة استفهامية فالاثنين صح و لكن الافضل مستقبل قريب عن المضارع المستمر

We are(**playing**-going to play)this afternoon

Are we(playing-**going to play**)this afternoon?

5ـالمستقبل المستمر Will be + v"ing

يعبر عن حدث سوف يكون مستمر في وقت محدد في المستقبل

between………and…………… from………to……………..

at 7 o'clock tomorrow **this time tomorrow/……………** **then**

Don't phone me at 7 p.m tomorrow as I will (sleep-**be sleeping**)then
Between 8and 10 tomorrow I will(take-**be taking**)my exam

2- كما يستخدم المستقبل المستمر للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون مستمرا عندما يقطعه حدث آخر أو عندما يتم حدث آخر في المستقبل. (تقاطع)

- I **will be waiting** for you when your bus arrives.
- I'll **be staying** at Madison Hotel, if anything *happens* and **you** *need* to contact me.
- He **will be studying** at the library tonight, so he will not see Jennifer when she *arrives*.

3- كما يستخدم المستقبل المستمر للتعبير عن حدثين سوف يكونان مستمران معا فى نفس الوقت فى المستقبل. (توازى) و هنا يفضل وضع الزمن الذى بعد الرابطمضارع بسيط او مستمر

- At the party tomorrow, Ahmed **will be singing** while Sarah **is dancing**.
I **will be working** hard next week **while** you **are relaxing** on the beach.

4- يستخدم المستقبل المستمر أيضا عندما نخمن ما يفعله شخص الآن

- Don't call him now, he'**ll be doing** his homework.
- I don't want to disturb them. I'm sure they'**ll be cleaning** their house at the moment.

5- لا يستخدم المستقبل المستمر مع الأفعال التى تعبر عن حالـــــــة(افعال الشعور – الامتلاك – الكينونة – قصيرة المدى .

Be – have يمتلك own – possess- want – join – know – seem – love – like – admire – prefer -
- Maher **will be** at my house when you arrive. (Not: ~~will be being~~)
- After I study, I **will know** all the answers for the test. (Not: ~~will be knowing~~)

may be + V.ing

- يستخدم (may be v.ing) للتعبير عن أحداث محتملـــة الحدوث (أحداث غير مؤكدة) ستكون مستمرة فى المستقبــل

- I can't visit you because I will / may be doing my homework this evening.
- In 100 years, people **may be living** in space.
- When she's 21, she **may be working** in London.

Will have +p.p 6ـ زمن المستقبل التام

يدل على اتمام حدث في وقت معين في المستقبل

By +زمن في المستقبل **In two years' time**
Before/By the time مستقبل بسيط او تام و الافضل تام +مضارع بسيط

By 2050 , we will(build-**have built**)the bridge

قد يكون الفعل في المبني للمجهول

☺In three years' time ,the road will…………
a)**have been paved** c)have paved b)pave a)be paved
Before Ali comes , we will (do-**have done**)the homework

المعنى هو الاساس فى ازمنة المستقبل ركز مع الامثلة

- By 2030 we will(build – **have built**) 20 schools
- By 2030 , most of the people all over the world will (**speak** – have spoken) English
- By 7 o'clock tonight I will (**be doing** – have done)the homework so I can't come with you
- By 7 o'clock tonight , I will (be doing – **have done**) the homework so we can go out

-Choose the correct answer : practice

1- Tomorrow , I………..to a secret location . I have arranged for that
a)am travelling **b)will travel** **c)am going travel** **d)travel**

2- they……….probably be in space for about five or six days
a)should b)can c)shall d)will
3- I'm sure tomorrow's match……….really exciting
a)is being b)will be c)is going to be d)might be
4- My train……….at 7.15 this evening
a)is going to leave b)leaves c)will leave d)is leaving
5- -I think my brother……….a doctor, he is clever .
a)is going to be b)will be c)would be d)is
6- My plans for tomorrow morning is that I……….prof Afifi
a)am going to meet b)meet c)will meet d)will be meeting
7- -A:this year , I'm going on holiday to Alex . B: I'm sure you……..it
a)will enjoy b)are enjoying c)enjoy d)are going to enjoy
8- I think my brother .... a doctor , he's very clever
a)is b)will be c)is being d)is going to be
9- Are you ...... tennis after school today ?
a)play b)going to play c)will play d)playing
10- I expect he .... the exam
a)pass b)passes c)is passing d)will pass
11- Between 7 and 9 I ...... sleeping
a)am b)will be c)am being d)will have
12- Haneen ..... 16 on Monday
a)will be b)is c)is going to d)is being
13- He .... a plan for his study , he has intended to do that
a)is making b)will make c)will be making d)is going to make
14- I think the weather in England ………… cold and rainy .
a) will be b) is going to be c) is being d) shall be
15- There's not a cloud in the sky – it ………… another very sunny day .
a) will be b) is going to be c) is being d) will
16- They ……… lots of sports here soon, they've prepared for this .
a) are going to start b) will start c) are starting d) start
17- I think you ……… very good at squash .
a) is going to be b) are being c) are going to d) will be
18- I've planned. I ………… try hockey .
a) will b) am going to c) am doing to d) won't
19- I've decided what to do at the weekend. I ………… my uncle .
a) am going visit b) will visit c) am going to visit d) is visiting
20-I…………the summer holiday in Marsa Matrouh as planned.
a-am going to spend b-will spend c-am spending d-would spend

Exercises on Grammar

1. He hasn't studied hard. I think he……………….this exam.
a- will fail b- fails c- is going to fail d- failed
2. You ………………..it if you aren't careful.
a- will break b- are going to break
c- have broken d- are breaking
3. My brother ………………..twenty next week.
a- will be b- is being c- is going to be d- is
4. The sky is cloudy, I think it………………..

a- is going to rain b- has rained c- will rain d- would rain

5. The ceiling of the room doesn't look very safe, it ………………..

a- will fall b- is falling c- is going to fall d- falls

6. I'm………………..my uncle at the airport at six o'clock.

a- going to meet b- am meeting c- will meet d- meet

7. If you play well, you………………..the match.

a- is going to win b-win c- will win d- would win

8. He ………………..to London next week, he has booked the tickets.

a- traveling b- is traveling c- will travel d- travels

9. He is filling the bucket with water. He ………………..the car.

a- is going to wash b- washes c- has washed d- will wash

10. We are saving up because we ………………..buy a car.

a- will b- are being c- are going to d- would

11. You ………………..punished if you make that mistake again.

a- will be b- is being c- is going to be d- is

12. I………………..work in an hour. I have arranged it with my boss.

a- will leave b- am leave c- am going to leave d- will

13. Has everything been arranged? - Yes. The boss ….for London tomorrow morning.

a- is going to leave b- will leave c- is leaving d- has left

14. A: You see that old lady who can't lift her bag? B: I…………..her with the bag.

a- am helping b- help c- am going to help d- helped

15. What are your family's plans for the weekend? - They ……………..it on the farm.

a- will spend b- are spending c- are going to spend d- would spend

16. A: What have they decided to do? B: They…………..the small factory next month.

a- have sold b- are selling c- are going to sell d- will sell

17. Switch off computers and TV when you ………………..using them.

a- finished b- have finished c- had finished d- will finish

18. My plane ………………..at ten-tomorrow morning.

a- arrives b- arrived c- has arrive d- was arriving

19. The train………………..the station at 5 o'clock tomorrow.

a- leaves b- will leave c- leave d- left

20. I ………………..leave until he has come.

a- wouldn't b- won't c- didn't d-don't

21. I expect Ahmed ………………..through his exams.

a- is getting b- is going to get c- will get d- would get

22. There is too little petrol left. The car ………………...

a- stop b- is going to stop c- is stopping d- stops

23. Mum, I know you're busy cooking. I………………..who it is at the door.

a- am seeing b- will see c- am going to see d- would see

24. We ………….a party tomorrow at 7 pm for Maha's birthday.

a- have given b- give c- giving d- are giving

25. I.................work in an hour. I have arranged it with my boss.

a- will leave b- am leaving c- am going to d- will

26. How old are you?- I…………37 next February.

a- am b- am going to be c- will be d- am being

27. I expect the next match……………much more difficult.

a- will be b- is going to be c- is being d- has been

28. Go and see that film. I'm sure that you……………….it.

a- will enjoy b- are enjoying c- are going to enjoy d- enjoy

29. Keep quiet or I …………you out of the class.

a- am sending b- will send c- am going to send d- send

30. Perhaps, my family…………go to Paris the next holiday.

a- are going to b- going to c- shall d- will

31. Look out! The rock is loose. It……………on your head.

a- is going to fall b- will fall c- is falling d- falls

32. Look! He………..off his bike.

a- will fall b- is going to fall c- will have fallen d- fall

33- Being intelligent, she…………..first next year.

a-comes b-is coming c-is going to come d-will come

34- She has invited all her friends. Her 26th birthday………..tomorrow.

a-gives b-is having c-is being had d-is being given

35- She ………to the park with us in the evening tomorrow. She knows all about it.

a-goes b-will go c-is going to go d-is going

36- In ten years' time, my father…………even older.

a-will look b-is looking c-going to look d-looks

37- I………..my aunt next Friday as I am welcoming some friends at home.

a-am not visiting b-won't visit c-can't visit d-don't visit

38- I'm afraid , I think he………his exams.

a-will pass b-won't pass c-is passing d-isn't passing

39- Mum is busy cooking, I …………who is knocking at the door.

a-am seeing b-will see c-am going to see d-see

40- He is going to catch the bus when it…………

a-arrives b-will arrive c-arrived d-arrive

41- Don't wash the dishes if you……..in a hurry.

a-were b-are being c-are d-have been

42- I can't go out with you this afternoon. I ………..my homework.

a-do b-going to do c-will do d-am doing

43- He is brave by nature. He…………the peoblem.

a-face b-is facing c-is going to face d-will face

44- A: The windows are dirty B:Yes, I know…………them

a-clean b-cleaning c-will clean d-am going to clean

45- You………..so lazy. Stop it, please. It's annoying.

a-will be b-are being c-are going to be d-are to be

46- You won't leave the office until the manager…………you.

a-called b-had called c-has called d-call

47- What's the matter with you? You look like you……….

a-faint b-are fainting c-are going to faint d-will faint

Unit 5 Lesson 5 Chapter 5

close to	قريب من	dead	ميت
bottom	قاع	leader	قائد
hills	تلال	explain	يشرح
fresher	اكثر نقاء	work for	يعمل لدى
suddenly	فجأة	start	يبدأ / بداية
dangerous	خطير	Interested in	مهتم ب
decide to	يقرر أن	at the end	فى النهاية
towards	تجاه	trust	يثق فى / ثقة
realise	يدرك	allow	يسمح
remember	يتذكر	money	نقود
gun	بندقية	of course	بالتأكيد
feel safer	يشعر اكثر أمانا	need	يحتاج / احتياج
to my surprise	لدهشتى	hide (hid)	يختفى
come out from	يخرج من	treasure	كنز
kneel down (knelt)	يركع / ينحنى	wait for	ينتظر ل
dry voice	صوت جاف	return to	يعود الى
speak to	يتحدث الى	on his own	بمفرده
skin	جلد	look for	يبحث عن
burn	يحرق	spade	جاروف
burned	محترق	prefer	يفضل
dirty	قذر	group	مجموعة
sail	يبحر /شراع	pirates	قراصنة
live on	يتغذى على	sound	صوت شئ
dream of	يحلم ب	voice	صوت بشرى
get back to	يعود الى	fight (fought)	يتشاجر / مشاجرة
begin (began)	يبدأ	directions	اتجاهات
look worried	يبدو قلقا	give (gave)	يعطى
problem with	مشكلة مع	easily	بسهولة
rich	غنى	next to	بجوار
perhaps	ربما	flag	علم
crazy	مجنون	fly (flew)	يطير
believe	يعتقد / يصدق	above	فوق

Treasure Island Chapter 5

I finally stopped running and saw that I was close to the bottom of one of the small hills. The air was fresher here and the trees were taller. Suddenly, from up the hill, something jumped behind a tree. I did not know if it was a man or an animal but it looked big and dangerous. I decided to walk back towards the beach, but then I saw him again. I realised it was a man, but he was running very fast from tree to tree. I remembered that I had a gun and this made me feel safer. I decided to walk towards the man.

توقفت أخيرًا عن الجرى ورأيت أنني قريب من أسفل أحد التلال الصغيرة. كان الهواء انقى هنا وكانت الأشجار أطول. فجأة ، من أعلى التل ، قفز شيء وراء شجرة. لم أكن أعرف ما إذا كان رجلاً أو حيوانًا ولكنه كان كبيرًا وخطيرًا. قررت أن أسير باتجاه الشاطئ ، لكنني رأيته مرة أخرى. أدركت أنه كان رجلاً ، لكنه كان يجرى بسرعة من شجرة إلى أخرى. تذكرت أن لدي بندقية وهذا جعلني أشعر بالأمان. قررت السير نحو الرجل.

When he saw me walking towards him, to my surprise, he came out from behind the tree and knelt down in front of me.
“Who are you?” I asked. “Ben Gun,” he said in a dry voice. “I’ve not spoken to anyone for three years.”

عندما رآني امشى نحوه، لمفاجئتي، خرج من خلف الشجرة وركع أمامي.
" من أنت؟" انا سألته" . بن جن" ، قال بصوت جاف. "لم أتحدث مع أي شخص منذ ثلاث سنوات".

The man had very long hair and skin that was burned by the sun. His clothes were dirty and made of old sails. “What happened to you?” I asked.

كان للرجل شعر طويل للغاية وبشرة أحرقتها الشمس. كانت ملابسه متسخة ومصنوعة من أشرعة قديمة". ماذا حدث لك؟".

“I was left here by a ship,” he said. “I’ve lived on fish and fruit ever since. I dream of eating good food again.”
“If I can get back to my ship, I’ll give you bread and cheese,” I said.

قال: "لقد تركتني سفينة هنا". "لقد عشت على الأسماك والفواكه منذ ذلك الحين. أحلم بتناول طعام جيد مرة أخرى" .
قلت: "إذا استطعت العودة إلى سفينتي ، فسأعطيك الخبز والجبن".

He began to look worried. “If you can get back to your ship?! Why? What’s to stop you?” he said. “It isn’t a problem with you,” I replied.

بدأ يبدو قلقا. "إذا كنت تستطيع العودة إلى سفينتك ؟! لماذا ؟ ما الذي يمنعك؟
أجبته: "إنها ليست مشكلة معك".

“I’m a good man,” he told me. “I’m very rich, too!” he said in a quiet voice.
I began to think that perhaps Ben Gun was crazy. Ben Gun saw that I did not believe him.

قال لي: "أنا رجل طيب". قال بصوت هادئ: "أنا غني جدًا ، أيضًا"!
بدأت أعتقد أنه ربما كان بن جن مجنونًا. رأى بن غون أنني لم أصدقه.

“I am rich! And you can be rich too, because you found me!” he said. Then he looked worried and said, “You didn’t come on Flint’s ship, did you?”
I realised now that this man could help me.

"انا غني! وقال "يمكنك أن تكون غنيًا أيضًا ، لأنك وجدتني!" ثم بدا قلقًا وقال: "لم تأتِ على متن سفينة فلينت ، أليس كذلك؟" أدركت الآن أن هذا الرجل يمكن أن يساعدني.

“No, Flint’s dead, but some of Flint’s crew is on the ship. That is not good for any of us.” I told him. “Is there a man with one leg?” he asked

"لا ، فلينت مات ، ولكن بعض طاقم فلينت على متن السفينة. هذا ليس جيدًا لأي واحد منا. " انا أخبرته.
"هل هناك رجل بساق واحدة؟"

“Yes, Silver. He’s the cook and their leader,” I explained.
“If you work for Silver, I’m finished,” he said.
I decided to tell him my story from the start, and he looked very interested.

" نعم ، سيلفر. أنه الطباخ وزعيمهم." انا اوضحت له. قال: "إذا كنت تعمل مع سيلفر، فقد انتهي امرى".
قررت أن أخبره قصتي منذ البداية وبدا مهتماً للغاية.

“You’re a good boy,” he said at the end. “Don’t worry, you can trust me. Do you think that Trelawney would give me money and allow me to come home on the ship if I helped him?” he asked.
“Of course,” I replied. “And he’ll need your help on the ship home, I’m sure.”

قال في النهاية: "أنت ولد جيد". "لا تقلق ، يمكنك ان تثق بي. هل تعتقد أن تريلاوني سيمنحني المال ويسمح لي بالعودة إلى بيتي على متن السفينة إذا ساعدته؟."

" بالطبع ،" أجبته. "سوف يحتاج إلى مساعدتكم على السفينة ، أنا متأكد."

"You're right," he said. "You know, I was on Flint's ship when he hid the treasure here. He was with six men and they were on the island for about a week. We waited for them on a ship called the Walrus. One day, Flint returned to the ship on his own. The other six men were dead. We don't know how he did it. Billy Bones and Long Adel Silver were with me on the ship. They asked Flint where then treasure was. 'You can go on the island and look for it,' he said. 'But you'll be there on your own. I'm taking this ship home.'

قال: "أنت على حق". "أنت تعلم ، كنت على متن سفينة فلينت عندما أخفى الكنز هنا. كان مع ستة رجال وكانوا في الجزيرة لمدة أسبوع تقريبًا. انتظرناهم على متن سفينة تسمى الفظ. في أحد الأيام ، عاد فلينت إلى السفينة بمفرده. الرجال الستة الآخرون ماتوا. لا نعرف كيف فعل ذلك. كان بيلي بونز ولونج جون سيلفر معي على متن السفينة. سألوا فلينت أين كان الكنز. وقال "يمكنك الذهاب إلى الجزيرة والبحث عنها". 'لكنك ستكون هناك لوحدك. أنا آخذ هذه السفينة إلى المنزل.

"Three years ago, I was on a different ship. When we saw the island, I told our crew that Flint's treasure was on it. We spent twelve days looking for it. They were not happy when we found nothing.

قبل ثلاث سنوات ، كنت على متن سفينة مختلفة. عندما رأينا الجزيرة ، أخبرت طاقمنا أن كنز فلينت كان عليه. لقد أمضينا اثني عشر يومًا بحثاً عنه. لم يكونوا سعداء عندما لم نجد شيئًا.

One day, they went back to the ship and told me I could stay. 'Here's a gun and a spade. You can look for the treasure on your own!' they said. So, you tell Trelawney, I would prefer to work for a man I can trust like him, than with a group of pirates."

ذات يوم، عادوا إلى السفينة وأخبروني أنه يمكنني البقاء. "خذ مسدس وكريك. يمكنك البحث عن الكنز بمفردك!" لذلك أنت اخبر تريلاوني إنني أفضل العمل مع رجل يمكنني الوثوق به مثله ، عنالعمل مع مجموعة من القراصنة."

"I'll tell him, but how can I return to my ship from here?" I asked him.
"I have a boat. I made it myself. We could go to the ship when it's dark!"
Suddenly, we heard the sound of a gun.

"سوف أخبره ، لكن كيف يمكنني العودة إلى سفينتي من هنا؟" انا سألته
لدي قارب. صنعته بنفسي. نستطيع أن نذهب إلى السفينة عندما يحل الظلام" !
فجأة ، سمعنا صوت البندقية.

"They have started to fight," I said. "We must be quick!"
I began to run back with Ben. He gave me directions, and ran easily next to me. We heard more guns, then I saw a flag flying above some trees.

قلت: "لقد بدأوا القتال". "يجب أن نكون سريعين"!
بدأت في الجرى مع بن. أعطاني التوجيهات ، وجرى بسهولة بجانبي. سمعنا المزيد من الأسلحة ، ثم رأيت علمًا يرفرف فوق بعض الأشجار

Exercise on Chapter (5)

1-Tell your friend that we are going on a trip. I know he might be...........
(worried – worrying – interested – interesting)
2-Top is to..............as rich is to poor.
(low – right – bottom – left)
3-I can't return home late at night. My father won't........this.
(allow – refuse – kneel – realise)

4-Young girls prefer light colours to………..ones.
(heavy – thick – dark – close)
5-I apologized when I …….that I had made a big mistake.
(allowed – directed – preferred – realised)
6-Use this………to dig a hole for the tree. We will plant over there.
(gun – spade – sail – ship)
7-The Egyptian……includes three colours in addition to the yellow eagle.
(army – police – leader – flag)
8-In the past, experienced traveller used to depend on stars for……….
(directions – food – light – flight)
9-Don't………, mum. Everything is OK.
(allow – worry – prefer – believe)
10-He……down and carried the little baby in his arms.
(broke – turned – knelt – sailed)
11-I enjoy the……….air of the sea when we go to Alexandria.
(dry – dark – heavy – fresh)
12-It is a risk to…..a man who has a gun unless you are prepared.
(fight – worry – sail – start)
13-A……..…is a tool for digging that has a long handle and a broad metal blade that you push into the ground.
(gun – spade – sail – ship)
14-Don't …….what Ali says. He is a big liar.
(lead – burn – believe – fight)
15-The police……the terrorists and arrested them all.
(honoured – fought – realised – welcomed)
16-I can do the shopping………..my own.
(at – by – on – in)
17-The new coach won the Super Cup in his first match which was a good………..
(spade – start – end – fight)
18-I asked my teacher to………..a maths problem to me.
(think – believe – explain – understand)
19-Without sun cream, the sun will…………your skin.
(turn – burn – cool – freeze)
20-Our president Abd El Fatah El Sisi is an intelligent……………….
(sailor – businessman – pirate – leader)
21-People who suffer from starvation usually need food………..
(supplies – surveys – reviews – analysis)

Unit 6 learning from literature

literature	الأدب	poem	قصيدة	**biography**	سيرة
poetry	شعر	author	مؤلف	**poet**	شاعر
repeated pattern	نمط متكرر	key	مفتاح	**kidnap**	يخطف
currant	زبيب	case	حالة	**current**	جاري
successful	ناجح	behind	خلف	**treasure**	كنز
rules	قواعد	adventure	مغامرة	**plot**	قطعة ارض
pirates	قراصنة	wish	يتمني	**hay**	تبن
garden	حديقة	gardener	بستاني	**path**	ممر
follow	يتبع	through	خلال	**row**	صف
publisher	ناشر	unfriendly	غير ودود	**fruitful**	مثمر
tools	أدوات	dig	يحفر	**busy**	مشغول
describe	يصف	comics	مجلات هزلية	**season**	فصل
favour	معروف	verse	بيت شعر	**suppose**	يفترض
rhyme	قافية	respond	يستجيب	**rhythm**	وزن شعري
formal	رسمي	especially	خصوصا	**informal**	غير رسمي
boring	ممل	neighbour	جار	**activities**	أنشطة
dress	يرتدي	fair	عادل	**candle**	شمعة
fun	متعة	Masterpiece	تحفة	**length**	طول
quite	تماما	dislike	يكره	**hop**	يقفز
hate	يكره	grow up	يكبر	**hatred**	كراهية
clear	واضح	publish	ينشر		

Definitions:

candle	something you burn to produce light.	شمعة
hop	to move by jumping on one leg.	يقفز
pleasant	enjoyable, nice or good	سار
rhyme	when words end with the same sound.	قافية
rhythm	a repeated sound in music, poems, etc.	ايقاع
swing	a moving seat that children play on	ارجوحة
treasure	gold, silver, money, etc. that someone has hidden	كنز
verse	lines that form one part of a poem	سطر شعر
bare	not covered by anything	عارى
plots	small pieces of land for growing plants on	قطع ارض
hay	dried grass that people use to feed animals	قش او دريس
dig	move something in or under the soil using a tool	يحفر
lock	close something using a key	يغلق
silly	not clever or sensible	ساذج
profit	get something good or useful from a situation	يستفيد
barrow	something with one wheel that gardeners use to carry things	بروبطة
currant row	a line of plants that have small fruits	صف العنب
keep the gravel walk	stay on the path through the garden	يظل على الطريق
Indian Wars	a children's game	لعبة هندية
pinching toes	toes that hurt because of the cold	الاطراف القارصة

a novel	a long story	رواية
a poem	is a piece of writing often arranged in lines that rhyme	قصيدة
poetry	is a form of writing	شعر
a poet	is someone who writes poems	شاعر

collocation and expressions

come	home	يعود للبيت	**follow**	rules	يتبع قواعد
do	• a favour • an important job	يصنع معروفا يؤدى عمل هام	**improve**	his teeth	يحسن صحته
give	a reason a rhythm	يبرر يعطى ايقاع	**make**	• a request • a surface • preparation for	يطلب يمهد السطح يجهز ل
have	a rhythm fun	به ايقاع يمرح	**spend**	time reading	يقضى الوقت فى القراءه
			stay	in bed	يلزم الفراش

Prepositions and expressions

feel like	يشعر و كأنه	look down on	ينظر من أعلى لأسفل على
get up	يستيقظ	go away	يبتعد
at night	ليلا	profit from	يستفيد من
go to bed	يذهب للفراش	have a fight	يتشاجر
by day	نهارا	on her way home	فى طريقها للمنزل
end with	ينتهي ب	do shopping	يتسوق
stay with	يمكث مع	make a call	يجرى مكالمة تليفونية
blame on	يلقي اللوم علي	it's a matter of time	انها مسألة وقت
alternative sources	مصادر بديلة	make arrangement for	يقوم بعمل ترتيبات ل
away behind	بعيدا خلف	currant row	صف من اشجار العنب
best known for	مشهور ب	adventure story	قصة مغامرة
popular with	محبوب لدي	bare feet	حافي القدمين
have rhythm	ذو إيقاع	put something away	يضع شيء ما في مكانه
lay it down	يضع جانب ا	precious treasure	كنز نفيس
a collection of	مجموعة من	at the end of	فى نهاية
a set of	مجموعة من	on television	فى التليفزيون
popular with	محبوب من	make a decision	يتخذ قرار
fall on	يسقط على	do a favour	يقدم معروفا
at sea	فى البحر	look for	يبحث عن
go up	يرتفع	have a quick look	يلقى نظرة سريعة
go down	يهبط	miss a lesson	يفوته درس
sound like	يبدو مثل	have a headache	يعانى من الصداع
go up and down	يرتفع و يهبط	Do exercises	يؤدى تمرينات
no one else but	لا احد اخر سوى	**never seems to want**	لا يبدو مطلقا انه يريد
dress by yellow cande light	يرتدى ملابسه على ضوء الشمع الاصفر	**nor wishes to be spoken to**	لا يرغب فى احد ان يتحدث معه
fire a gun	يطلق النار	**go past me**	يمر امامى
put up a flag	يرفع الراية	**this makes it easy to**	هذا يجعل من الصعب

	remember تذكرها
a book of fact كتاب علمى	**for a while** لفتره من الوقت
a brief summary ملخص موجز	**go to bed** يذهب للنوم
a clear conclusion خاتمه واضحه	**I hated it** كنت اكره ذلك
a form of writing احد انواع الكتابه	**I'm afraid I can't** يؤسفنى اننى لااستطيع
a full- time writer كاتب متفرغ	**in addition to** بالاضافه الى
a good length for a poem طول مناسب لقصيده	**in different seasons** فى الفصول المختلفه

1-else اخر\مختلف\ثانى

تستخدم else بعد الكلمات الاتيه...

any.. every.. no... some... or
after...... how.. where... who... why

- Everybody else has agreed except you.
- After I thanked them , I didn't know what else to say.

2-Let/make ....inf → be let / made to + inf

- He let the girl leave .

The girl was let / allowed to leave .

He made her tidy the room. → She was made to tidy the room.

quiet(n\adj) هادئ \ هدوء **quite(adv)** تماما\الى حد ما
quit(v) يترك\يتوقف عن\يستسلم\يستقيل

- He is a quiet man. He doesn't talk very much.
- Can I have some quiet ,please?
- The article was quite good.
- He quitted his job after an argument with his boss.

tool(n) اداه (تحملها فى يدكلعمل شيئما مثل الفأس \ الشاكوش/ ...)
device(n) آله اوجهاز(لعمل وظيفه معينه)
instrument(n) آله موسيقيه \اداه صغيره فى العلوم او الطب او الموسيقى

- The hammer is tool for hammering nails
- He measured the room using an electronic device.
- Surgeons always use surgical instruments.

row(n) صفمنالناس او الاشياء بجانب بعضهم البعض
queue(n) طابور من الناس او الاشياء خلف بعضهم البعض يتظرون شيئ

- We booked our seats in the front row of the theatre.
- They built a row of hotels right along the sea front.
- If you want bread ,you have to join the queue.
- There was a long queue of traffic stretching down the road.

lock(v) يقفل	**lock in (v)** يحجز بالداخل **x lock out** يحجز بالخارج
lock(v) يحتفظ بشئ (فى مكان امن)	**lock up(v)** يسجن
lock (v) يتوقف عن الحركه(يقفش)	**lock (n)** قفل

- remember to lock the front door when you leave the house.

Verse(n)	مقطع من شعر (جزء من قصيدههيحتوى على عدد من السطور الشعريه)
Verse(n)	ايه فى القرآن او الكتاب المقدس
Verse(n)	الشعر - النظم

- this poem has five **verses**. each verse includes six lines.
- Mr. Helmi recites some **verses** before he starts his work in the office.
  this play is written in **verse**.

rhyme (n) القافيه	rhyme (n) نشيد
rhyme (n) شعر مقفى	rhyme (v)(with) يسجع\ يكون قافيه

- traditional **poetry** always has rhyme.
- this poem is written in **rhyme**.
- I liked **rhyme** when I was in primary school.
- the word (night) **rhymes** with(white).

Plot(n)(مساحه صغيره) قطعه ارض	Plot(n)(against)مكيده\ مؤامرة	Plot(v) يتأمر
Plot (n)مدفن العائله	Plot(n) (الاحداث) حبكه الروايه او الفيلم	

- I have a small vegetables **plot**
- My grandfather bought this **plot** a short time before his death.
- there was a **plot** against the company to make it lose a lot of money.
- the **plot** of the film was exciting.
- he **plotted** to steal the safe of the supermarket.
- they **plotted** against their manager.

poetry(n)شعر	**poem(n)قصيده**
poet(n)شاعر	**poetic(n)\poetical(adj)شعرى\ شاعرى**

- I studied English **poetry** at university.
- in Arabic, Hafez Ibrahim my favorite **poet**.
- Ahmed Shawky wrote great **poems**.
- my daughter has the talent of **poetic** expressions.

➢ **lie / lied / lied يكذب**

➢ **lie / lay /lain يرقد / ينام /) يقع للمكان (**

➢ **lay / laid / laid يضع / تبيض) يُعِدّ / يُرتِّب**

He laid the book on the table .
The hens have laid a lot of eggs.
She laid the table for four people.

➢ **The best + way to + inf. + is to + inf.**

The best way to be healthy is to get a lot of exercise.

➢ **stop + object + (v.+ing)**

We should stop people driving lorries in big cities.

➢ **or / otherwise: و إلا**

(تستخدم للتهديد و يأتى قبلها صيغة أمر أو نصيحة و بعدها مستقبل بسيط)

- Take your umbrella or you'll get wet.

➢ **suggest + v. + ing: يقترح**

He suggested spending the evening in the club.

➢ **suggest that + فاعل + should + مصدر يقترح**

Tom suggested that I shouldlook for another job.

➢ **favour جميل معروف - favourite مفضل** –

Can you do me a favour?
Football is my favourite sport?

- **result in= lead to الى يؤدي الى result from ينتج عن result ofلـ نتيجة**

Smoking results in/leads to cancer.
Cancer results from smoking.

Exercises on vocabulary

(1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The window isn't covered by anything, it is……………..
   a - bare b – well closed c - locked d – closed
2. Small pieces of land used for growing things are ……………..
   a - plots b - lakes c - ponds d – fountains
3. Farmers use ……………..to feed animals.
   a - milk b – hay c – pizza d – manure
4. To ……………..means to move something in or under soil using a tool.
   a – dig b - sing c – swim d – scratch
5. He ……………..the door with a key.
   a – closed b – locked c – slang d – sting
6. Something that is not clever or sensible ……………..
   a – silly b – really c – windy d – sandy
7. If you ……………..you get good or useful from a situation.
   a – forget b – found c – benefit d – prove
8. It is ……………..it is enjoyable and nice.
   a – boring b – bad c – horrible d – pleasant
9. Gold, silver and money hidden in a place……………..
   a - pleasure b - treasure c – pressure d – measure
10. The light was off, he used a ……………..to see.
    a - candle b – bulb c – glasses d – torches
11. The lines that form one part of a poem are ……………..
    a – verses b – coins c – mobs d – titles
12. ……………..the repeated sound in music or poems.
    a – verse b – rhythm c - poets d – prose
13. A moving seat that children play on is ……………..
    a – wing b – bring c – swing d – fling
14. There was no electricity in the house, so we had to use……………..
    a – candles b – pandas c – sandals d – wires
15. They found an old ship under the water which they think is full of……………..
    a – boats b – treasures c – pilots d – cells
16. I don't like this music, it doesn't have any……………..
    a – tools b – instrument c – rhythm d – verses
17. I enjoy riding a ……………..in the park.
    a - swing b – car c – elephant d - ship
18. For homework, we have to write the first ……………..of the poem.
    a – poets b – poetry c – verse d – chapter
19. It was very ……………..sitting in the park at the end of a hot day.
    a – boring b – pleasant c – ugly d – silly
20. Children love……………..in the sand on the beach.

a – rigging b – wigging c – wicking d – digging

21. In winter, farmers sometimes give their sheep…………….to eat.
a – fig b – hay c – meat d – milk

22. Don't forget to …………….the door when you leave the house.
a – lock b – log c – look d – open

23. The hotels in this city hope to …………….from the new airport.
a – benefit b – lose c – lie d – breeze

24. Their mother told them not to go out with…………….feet.
a – clean b – bare c – healthy d – long

25. My grandfather always has lots of carrots from his vegetable…………….
a – blog b – flock c – jog d – plot

26. Can you …………….me a favour?
a – make b – did c – does d – do

27. My …………….team is Zamalek.
a – favour b – favoured c – favourite d –favourable

28. The teacher made the pupils…………….homework again.
a - do b – to do c – does d – did

29. People were waiting in a …………….to book their tickets.
a – clue b – row c – blow d – queue

30. Could you …………….help me?
a – possibly b – possible c – improbable d – improbably

31. He …………….out of bed and quickly got dressed.
a –helped b – hopped c – rested d – slept

32. Do you think the word moon has the same …………….as the word June?
a – rhyme b – poem c – prose d – rhythm

33. I want you to …………….some jobs for me.
a – make b – give c – take d – do

34. A …………….row is a line of plants that have small fruits.
a – current b – currant c – carrot d – curl

35. The word hat rhymes …………….the word cat
a – on b – to c – with d – for

36. …………….is small stones , used to make a surface for paths , roads , etc.
a – Marvel b – Gravel c – Bravery d – Rock

37. The two girls …………….when they revised the lesson together.
a – profited b – lighted c – lost d – fought

38. I have read a / an…………….about the author Robert Louis Stevenson.
a – biography b – autobiography c – photography d – biographical

39. Samoa is a small …………….in the south Pacific
a – city b – town c – island d – village

40. Stevenson is best known for his …………….like kidnapped and treasure island.
a – poems b – poetry c – plays d – novels

41. A …………….is someone who writes poems - .
a – poetry b – poet c – novelist d – playwright

42. In my opinion , poets should write about …………….life.
a – everyday b – to each day c – everyday d – all day

43. The poem's subject is …………….boring.

a – quit b – quite c – quiet d – quick

44. It is ……………..to give the twins the same pocket money.

a – fair b – far c – fare d – unfair

45. How many ……………..does the poem consist of. ?

a – rhyme b – rhythm c – verses d – metaphors

46- There was a power failure for an hour last night , so we had to use ……. .

a- wax b- sunlight c- candle light d- highlight

47- for homework, we have to memorize the first two……. .

a- poems b- vases c- verses d- curses

48- I don't like this poem . it doesn't have any …… .

a- rhythmic b- rhythmical c- rhythm d- rhythmically

49- lines that form one part of a poem a called a ……

a- rhyme b- rhythm c- verse d- row

50- pollution rhymes with…..

a- intelligence b- education c-sonnet d- row

51- ….. means to jump on one foot.

a- hoof b- honey c- hop d- hurry

52- keep the ….. walk means to stay on the path through the garden.

a- grave b- ground c- gravel d- soil

53- the word ……. doesn't …… with (bite).

- plot b- verse c- rhyme d-hay

54- you should always ……. Your things away.

a- cut b- put c- dig d- make

55- dried grapes are called ………..

a- current b- currant c- currency d- coin

56- if something valuable is hidden, it's called …….

a- pressure b- pleasure c-treasure d- treason

57- I saw him digging in the ……

a- opt b- plot c- pilot d- pottery

58- I am fond of reading

a- poet b- plot c- poetry d- poetess

59- hay is a dried grass that people use to…….

a- feel b- feed c- chew d-swallow

60- my father loves gardening . he is a good……

a- guard b-vet c-garden d- plumber

61- A:the street is dark and empty. B: no problem I'll .... you home.

a- pinch b-plot c- walk d- block

62- the desert is the................ of a lot of animals.

a- house b hall c-home d-nest

63- he always .... in front of the mirror.

a- dresses b- wears c- put on d- takes

64- the .... each measure 20 meters by 30 meters.

a- land b- plots c- area d- ground

65- a: Do you mind helping me? b: .... What would you like me to do?

a- sure b- yes, not at all c- yes, of course d- no, not at all

Grammar

verbs + …….to+inf

agree	يوافق	arrange	يرتب	expect	يتوقع
decide	يقرر	dare	يجرؤ	refuse	يرفض
deserve	يستحق	demand	يطلب	manage	يتحكم
pretend	يتظاهر	expect	يتوقع	threaten	يهدد
hope	يأمل	want	يريد	offer	يعرض
wish	يأمل – يتمنى	plan	يخطط	learn	يتعلم
attempt	يحاول	promise	يعد	Try**	يحاول
seem	يبدو	choose	يختار		

- Hazem is **planning to go** to university next year.
- He **hopes to study** medicine.

V+V-ing

enjoy	يستمتع	**finish**	ينهي	**suggest**	يقترح
go	يذهب	**miss**	يفقد	**delay**	يؤجل
finish	ينهي	**detest / despise**	يكره بشدة	**mind**	يمانع
recommend	يزكي	**regret****	ينهي	**fancy**	يتخيل
prevent	يمتع	**avoid**	يتجنب	**admit**	يعترف
deny	ينكر	**come**	يأتي	**dislike**	يكره
loathe	يكره بشدة	**risk**	يخاطر	**Postpone**	يؤجل
Can't stand	لا يطيق	**Can't help**	لا يستطيع مقاومة	**Practise**	يمارس
involve	يتضمن				

- He avoided (to speak – ***speaking***) to her .
- She risked **to climb** the mountain . (***climbing***)
- He finished (to do – ***doing***) the h.w

هناك تركيبات أخرى يأتي بعدها v-ing :

- **Look forward to** + v–ing
- **It's no use** + v–ing
- **It's no good** + v–ing
- **Can't help** + v–ing
- **Be / get used to** + v–ing
- **have difficulty** +V-ing

object to + v–ing
thanks to + v–ing
due to + v–ing
can't stand + v–ing
be worth + v–ing
resort to +V-ing

- I look forward to (hear – ***hearing***) from you .

It's no use to hurry , the bus has left . (harrying

Exercise practice (1)

6-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:-

1- I really want ……… one of these festivals.
a) to see **b) see** **c) seeing** **d) to seeing**

2- My brother is learning ……… the oud.
a) to play **b) playing** **c) played** **d) to playing**

3- If I were you, I'd avoid ……… into the city during the festival.
a) to travel **b) travelled** **c) travelling** **d) travel**

4- My parents suggested ……… to the theatre.
a) going **b) to go** **c) went** **d) go**

5- I really want ……… to Hong Kong for the Chinese New Year.
a) going b) to going c) to go d) go
6- Before you go to London, you should practice ………. English .
a) speaking b) to speaking c) to speak d) speak
7- He hopes ……… a prize for his school work.
a) winning b) win c) to win d) to winning
8- She offered ……… me to the station in her car.
a) take b) to take c) taking d) to taking
9- We've just finished ……… a TV programme about Egyptian history.
a) watching b) to watch c) to watching d) watched
10- When did you decide ……… biology at university?
a) studying b) to study c) study d) studying
11- We've arranged ……… my brother up from the airport.
a) picking b) pick c) to pick d) to picking
12- Ali is planning ……… all weekend revising for next week's maths test.
a) to spending b) spending c) spend d) to spend
13- Sayed recommended ……… the ice cream.
a) to try b) tried c) trying d) that try
14- The manger ……… to make us stay in late if we didn't work harder.
a) recommended b) suggested c) threatened d) said
15- My friends suggested ……… to the sports club after school.
a) to go b) go c) went d) going
16- Tamer and I agreed ……… seven pounds each.
a) paying b) pay c) to pay d) was paying
17- The school arranged ……… a new charity this year.
a) supported b) supporter c) to support d) supporting
18- Kareem finished ……… his dinner at 6.30.
a) eating b) to eat c) to have eaten d) eaten
19- Amina admitted ……… how to open the door.
a) to be known b) knowing c) to know d) known
20- Hala agreed ……… to her young sister .
a) apologise b) to apologise c) to have apologised d) apologising
21- In 1954, the government decided ……… the High Dam.
a) built b) building c) to build d) had built
22- My teacher promised ……… me.
a) visit b) would visit c) to visit d) visiting

3- النمط الثالث : لا يوجد فرق نهائياً **(Verb +V-ing / To+inf)**

- **begin – start – continue** يواصل

4- النمط الرابع : يوجد فرق طفيف **(Verb +V-ing / To+inf)**

- **prefer – hate – like – love**
  - to + inf (تعبر عن موقف خاص (أى فى وقت محدد أو الآن
  - v-ing تعبر عن موقف عام (رأى) ليس مرتبط بوقت محدد

- I prefer (to drink – ***drinking***) tea .

- I prefer (***to drink*** – drinking) tea now .
- I like (to visit – ***visiting***) Alex .
- I like (***to visit*** – visiting) my uncle today .
- I like (***to swim*** – swimming) let's go هيا بنا (تعبر أن الحدث الآن)
- 5- النمط الخامس : يوجد فرق شديد **(Verb +V-ing / To+inf)**

• stop

- to + inf (لم يفعل) يتوقف لكى يفعل
- v-ing يتوقف عن فعل

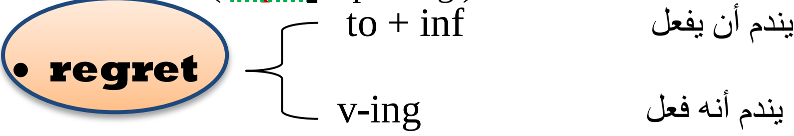
- While he was back home , he stopped (***to buy*** – buying) newspaper .
- He stopped (to smoke – ***smoking***) 3 years ago .



Forget
- to + inf ينسى أن يفعل
- v-ing ينسى أنه فعل

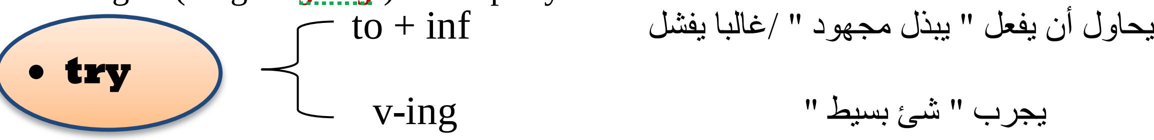
remember
- to+inf يتذكر أن يفعل
- V-ing يتذكر أنه فعل

- I forgot (***closing*** – to close) the door when I went back I found that it was closed
- Don't forget (***to close*** – closing) the door .
- Remember (***to post*** – posting) this letter .



- to + inf يندم أن يفعل
- v-ing يندم أنه فعل

- I regret (to go – ***going***) to the party yesterday .
- I regret (***to go*** – going) to the party tomorrow .
- I regret (to go – ***going***) to the party .



- to + inf يحاول أن يفعل " يبذل مجهود " / غالبا يفشل
- v-ing يجرب " شئ بسيط "

- He tried (***to climb*** – climbing) the mountain but he couldn't .
- Have you tried (to eat – ***eating***) meat with jam? .

ملاحظات خفيفة للطلبة الظريفة زيادة للمتفوقين فقط

1-

allow مفعول to + inf	**allow + v ing** يسمح بـ
advise مفعول to + inf	**advise + v ing** ينصح بـ
recommend مفعول to + inf	**recommend + v ing** يوصى بـ
permit مفعول to + inf	**permit + v ing** يسمح
encourage مفعول to + inf	**encourage + v ing** يشجع
forbid مفعول to + inf	**forbid + v ing** يحظر

7-Correct the verb

1- I advise (walk) ……… to town .
2- They advise her (walk) ……… to town .
3- They don't allow us (smoke) ……… here .
4- They encourage (do) ……… the test .
5- They encourage Ali (do) ……… the test .
6- They don't permit (smoke) ……… here .
7- They don't permit me (smoke) ……….. here .

2- الأفعال التالية الدالة علي الإدراك يأتي بعدها (v.ing) عندما ندرك جـــــزء من الحدث

hear	يسمع	notice	يلاحظ
see	يري	watch	يشاهد

- I heard Huda sing a song. (This means that I heard the whole song.)

- و يأتي بعد هذه الأفعال (مصـــدر) عندما ندرك كـــل الحدث

- I heard Huda singing a song. (This means that I heard part of the song.)

spend	مفعول v-ing	*stop	مفعول v-ing

- We can stop the river (flooded – ***flooding***)
- She spent all night (to think – ***thinking***)

3- Verbs + object + (to + inf.)

- بعــض الأفعـــال يأتي بعدها دائمـــا (مصـــدر + to + مفعـــول)

expect	يتوقع	cause	يجعل	persuade	يُقنع
want	يريد	tell	يُخبر	warn	يُحذر
order	يطلب	promise	يعد	inform	يُخبر / يُبَلِّغ
ask	يسأل / يطلب	train	يُدرب	force	يُجبر
invite	يدعو	enable	يُمكن	motivate	يحفز

Examples:

- My teacher advised us to study harder. - He didn't allow us enough time to finish the test.
- Do you think Dad will allow you to go to Amal's party?
- They invited us to have lunch with them.
- The bad weather forced people to stay at home all day.
- I persuaded her to start a new website.

- بعــض من الأفعـــال في هذه المجموعة يأتي بعدها (مصـــدر + to) بدون مفعول بدون تغيير في المعني

- She promised her father to do her best. = - She promised to do her best.

- أحيانا يؤثر حذف المفعول علي المعني عندما لا يوجد مفعول

- We expect **Sara** to arrive early. (Sara will arrive early)
- **We** expect to arrive early. (We will arrive early)

- بعــض من الأفعـــال في هذه المجموعة يأتي بعدها (مصـــدر + how to + مفعول)

- Ali **showed** us how to reach the station.
- We **teach** students (how) to read and write.

- عند بناء الجملة للمجهول يأتي بعد هذه الأفعال (مصـــدر + to)

- The bad weather forced **people** to stay at home all day. (**Active**)
- **People** were forced to stay at home all day by the bad weather. (**Passive**)

4- الأفعال (let / make) يأتي بعدهما (مصـــدر + مفعول)

- She wanted to go home, but her boss made her stay until the work was finished.
- My boss let me have the afternoon off to go to my sister's wedding.

- عند بناء الفعل (make) للمجهول يأتي بعده (مصـــدر + to)

- She wanted to go home, but She **was made to stay** until the work was finished.

5- الفعل (help) يأتي بعده (مصـــدر + مفعول) أو (مصـــدر + to + مفعول)

- He can help me understand this lesson. = - He can help me (**to**) understand this lesson.

6- يمكن أن نستخدم (مصدر + to) للتعبير عن الغرض

- I study hard **to get** good marks. - She is driving quickly to arrive on time.

7-- هنـــــــا (to = in order to = so as to) بمعني (لكـــــي)

- He completed all his homework to get a good grade.

8- نستخدم (مصدر + to) بعد الصفات الدالـــة علي المشاعر التالية

disappointed , glad , happy , pleased , relieved , sad , surprised

- I was **happy to help** them. - She will be **delighted to see** you.

9- نستخدم (مصدر + to) مع الجمل التي تبدأ بـ (صفـــة + It's)

- It was difficult to complete the rough draft.
- She thought it was impossible to remember all the rules.

10- (مصدر + to) في المجهول تصبح (to be + pp.)

- He hopes to be treated well at school.

(being + pp.) في المجهول تصبح (v.ing) -11

- I remember being carried to hospital after the accident.

allow+ v(ing)	**allow مفعول to+inf**

- The teacher allowed (to speak –speaking) in the class.
- The teacher allowed us (to speak- speaking) in the class.

قد تجد النفى فى الفعل الاصلى او ما يأتى بعده بمعنى :

- He intended to go to the club.
- He didn't intend to go to the club.
- He intended not to go to the club.

اذا وجدنا **starting** او**beginning** فى صيغه **(v.ing)** الذى بعدها **to+inf**

8-Practice Grammar (2)

1- I'm looking forward ……… more on this project .
A) do b) to do c) doing d) to doing

2- How about ……… at that festival for our project?
A) look b) looking c) to look d) to looking

3- Some students decided ……… snow sculptures in a park.
A) making b) make c) making d) to make

4- Thousands of people enjoy ……… at the sculptures.
A) to looking b) to look c) looking d) looks

5- I'd like ……… something on this for our project.
A) do b) doing c) to do d) to doing

6- I remember ……… a TV programme about it. It was about a year ago.
A) watching b) to watch c) to watching d) watch

7- I'll suggest ……… to the Sham El-Nessim festival in Egypt next year.
A) to go b) going c) go d) to going

8- When the children stopped ……… everyone clapped. They liked the song the song.
A) to sing b) singing c) to singing d) sang

9- They expect thousands of people ………. Sapporo for the Snow Festival.
A) visiting b) visit c) to visiting d) to visit

10- I regret ……… to the cinema. It was not a very good film.
A) to go b) going c) to going d) go

11- Their teacher is used ……… students with their homework.
A) helping b) to help c) to helping d) help

12- On my first day at school, I remember ……… into the classroom and seeing my teacher.
A) to go b) to going c) going d) go

13- Mr Zaki ordered us ……… running round the park.
A) start b) starting c) started d) to start

14- My father advised me ……… to bed early because I had a test the next day.
A) to go b) going c) go d) went

15- The ship's captain ordered the sailors ……… harder.
A) work b) working c) to work d) must work

16- The teacher warned the students ……… time.
A) not to waste b) not wasting c)don't waste d) no waste

17- Selim is so funny. He stopped ……… television because he said it was rotting his brain.
A) to watch b) is watching c) watch d) watching

18- I can't stand ……… any more. I really got bored.
A) wait b) waiting c) to waiting d) have waited
19- Ali prefers ……… to Dahab.
A) to have flown b) to fly c) is flying d) flew
20- I regret ……… you that Nabil won't be joining the team. I know you wanted him with us.
A) telling b) to tell c) have told d) am telling
21- I wouldn't like ……… given instructions.
A) to be b) being c) has been d) had been
22- While crossing the street, I ran into an old friend who stopped ……… my new address.
A) writing b) would write c) write d) to write
23- He advised me ……… for the interview at home.
A) practising b) practised c) to practise d) to practising
24- I regret not ………. Mary about the wedding. She didn't come to the party.
A) tell b) to tell c) telling d) to telling
25- Mrs. Jones, I regret ……… you that your credit limit has been exceeded.
A) inform b) to inform c) informing d) to informing
26- Stop ……… this terrible noise at once!.
A) make b) to make c) making d) to making

Exercises on Grammar

1- Choose the correct answer:

1. You should avoid …………… friends with such bad people.
a) to make b) make c) to making d) making
2. My brother has promised …………… smoking next week
a) stop b) stopped c) stopping d) to stop
3. The manager decided ……………… the reports before he left the office.
a) read b) reading c) reads d) to read
4. It's no use …………… over spilt milk.
a) cry b) cries c) crying d) cried
5. To be good at music, you have to practise …………….. every day.
a) played b) play c) to play d) playing
6. Rami offered …………….. his grandmother with her shopping.
a) helping b) to help c) help d) to helping
7. Nabil has decided ……………….. a new computer.
a) to buy b) buying c) buy d) bought
8. Yasser plans ……………… abroad next year.
a) working b) works c) works d) to work
9. Taha has always enjoyed ……………… poetry.
a) read b) to read c) reading d)with reading
10. Huda hopes …………….. a week with her aunt and uncle.
a) spend b) to spend c) spending d) to spending
11. Young children like …………….. to sing.
a) learn b) to learning c) to learn d) learned
12. To stay warm in cold weather, you've got to keep ………………. .
a) moving b) to moving c) to move d) in moving
13. When Karim finished …………………, he was very tired .
a) from running b) runs c) to run d) running

14. He found the film quite frightening, so he stopped ………….. it
a) to watch b) is watching c) watching d) watch
15. We have all agreed …………… a pay cut so that our company will survive.
a) taking b) to take c) take d) taken
16. The accused denied ……………… anywhere near the bank during the robbery.
a) be b) to be c) to being d) being
17. Most men dislike …………… the same shirt two days running.
a) wear b) to wear c) wearing d) worn
18. It's hard to imagine ………………… without electricity.
a) live b) living c) to live d) of living
19. Didn't you learn ………………… long division when you were at school?
a) doing b) do c) done d) to do
20. I've never managed ……………… to the end of "War and Peace".
a) getting b) get c) to get d) in getting
21. Most people don't mind ……………… overtime occasionally.
a) work b) working c) to work d) working
22. I suggest ……………… a taxi if it will save us a bit of time.
a) taking b) to take c) take d) taken
23. It's hard to imagine that anyone actually wants …………… down a mine.
a) work b) working c) to work d) working
24. If we wish ……………… Canada before **we** are old, we'd better start saving.
a) visit b) to visit c) visiting d) of visiting
25. I'll never forget …………… that rare old coin in the garden. I was only 12 then.
a) found b) to find c) founded d) finding
26. British Airways regret ……………. the cancellation of flight BA205 to Madrid.
a) announce b) to announcing c) announcing d) to announce
27. I can't stand …………………… to him.
a) to listen b) listening c) listened d) to listening
28. The thief got into the house because I forgot ……………… the window.
a) closing b) closed c) to closing d) to close
29. He regretted ………………… his job as he couldn't find another one.
a) leaving b) to leave c) left d) leaves
30. She deserved ………………… the first prize.
a) win b) winning c) won d) to win
31. Soha admitted ……………….. a lie when she was first asked.
a) telling b) to tell c) had told d) was telling
32. Hesham likes …………….. a nap in the afternoon.
a) to take b) is taking c) took d) taken
33. When I was young, I remember ……………… my grandmother every week.
a) visit b) to visit c) visiting d) to visiting
34. I love my grandmother. I remember ……………… her every week.
a) visit b) to visit c) visiting d) to visiting
35. Mona stopped …………… to her friend after they had a fight.
a) talk b) to talk c) talking d) to talking
36. Mona stopped ……………… to her friend on her way home.
a) talk b) to talk c) talking d) to talking

Unit 6 Lesson 5 Chapter 6

shore	شاطئ البحر	sink (sank/sunk)	يغوص / يغرق(اشياء)
wind	الرياح	sinking	الغرق
at all	على الاطلاق	blow(blew/blown)	تهب (الرياح)
attack	يهاجم / هجوم	different	مختلف
island	جزيرة	directions	اتجاهات
worried about	قلق بشأن	keep (kept)	يحفظ / يحافظ
trust	ثقة / يثق	patient	صبور / مريض
call	يتصل / يسمى	change	يغير / تغيير
reach	يصل الى	cannon	مدفع
fort	قلعة / حصن	realise	يدرك
well defended	محصنة جيدة	look round	ينظر حوله
shout	يصرخ / صرخة	prepare	يعد / يجهز
dead	ميت	move	يتحرك
death	موت	easy for	سهل على
die	يموت	hit (hit)	يضرب
deadly	مميت	stand up	يقف
run back to	يعود مسرعا الى	fire at	يطلق النار على
plan	يخطط / خطة	fall (fell/fallen)	يسقط
medicines	أدوية	cry	يصرخ / صرخة
at the same time	فى نفس الوقت	race	سباق
contact	يتصل / اتصال	feet	أقدام(مسافة)
surprised	مندهش	include	يتضمن
quickly	بسرعة	get to	يصل الى
return to	يعود الى	as fast as possible	بسرعة بقدر الامكان
None of	لا احد من	at last	على الاقل
advantage	ميزة	arrive at	يصل الى
disadvantage	عيب	gun fire	اطلاق النار
weapons	أسلحة	pick….up	يلتقط
supplies	امدادات / مؤن	servant	خادم
close to	قريب من	put up a flag	يرفع العلم
careful	حريص	take…down	ينزل / يخفض
prevent	يمنع	alive	على قيد الحياة

Treasure Island Chapter 6

Dr Livesy:

When the boats went to the shore, I talked to Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney. There was no wind at all, so we knew we could not take the ship, even if we wanted to attack the six men who stayed on the ship with us. Then we heard that Jim Hawkins was on the island with Silver and his men. We were very worried about him.

الدكتور لايفسي:

عندما ذهبت القوارب إلى الشاطيء، تحدثت مع كابتن سموليت ومستر تريلاوني. لم يكن هناك اى رياح على الإطلاق، لذلك عرفنا أننا لا نستطيع أن نأخذ السفينة ، حتى لو أردنا مهاجمة الرجال الستة الذين بقوا على السفينة معنا. ثم سمعنا أن جيم هوكينز كان على الجزيرة مع سيلفر ورجاله. كنا قلقين جدا عليه

I decided to take a boat to the shore with another man we could trust, called Hunter. When we reached the island, we walked a little way and then we found a small fort. It was big enough for about

twenty-five people and was very well defended. It also had water. Then I heard a shout. I thought that Jim was dead.

قررت أن آخذ قاربًا إلى الشاطئ مع رجل آخر يمكننا ان نثق به يدعى هانتر. عندما وصلنا إلى الجزيرة ، مشينا قليلاً ثم وجدنا حصنًا صغيرًا. كان كبيرا بما يكفي لحوالى خمسة وعشرين شخصًا وتم الدفاع عنها جيدًا. كان بها أيضا ماء. ثم سمعت صرخة. اعتقدت أن جيم قد مات.

We ran back to the boat and soon returned to the Hispaniola. I told Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney my plan. We quickly put food, medicines and guns in the boat.

جرينا إلى القارب وسرعان ما عدنا إلى هيسبانيولا. اخبرت كابتن سموليت ومستر تريلاوني بخطتي. وضعنا بسرعة الطعام والأدوية والبنادق في القارب.

At the same time, Captain Smollett and Mr Trelawney said to Silver's men who were still on the ship, "We have guns. If you try to contact Silver, you will be dead." They looked very surprised.

في نفس الوقت ، قال كابتن سموليت ومستر تريلاوني لرجال سيلفر الذين كانوا لا يزالون على السفينة ، "نحن لدينا أسلحة. إذا حاولتم الاتصال بسيلفر ، فستموتوا ". كانوا مندهشين جدًا.

I then took the boat back to the beach with Hunter and another sailor called Joyce. We quickly took everything up to the fort, then I left Hunter and Joyce in the fort and returned to the Hispaniola.

ثم أخذت القارب عائدا إلى الشاطئ مع هانتر وبحار آخر يدعى جويس. أخذنا كل شيء بسرعة إلى الحصن ، ثم تركت هانتر وجويس في الحصن وعدت إلى سفينة هيسبانيولا.

We knew that Silver had more men than us, but we also knew that none of them had guns. We thought that this gave us an advantage. On the Hispaniola, Trelawney helped me to put food and more weapons into the boat. Then we called for Captain Smollett, Redruth and a good sailor called Abraham Gray, and they climbed into the boat with us.

عرفنا أن سيلفر لديه رجال أكثر منا، لكننا عرفنا أيضًا أنه لم يكن لدى أي منهم سلاح. اعتقدنا أن هذا أعطانا ميزة. وعلى سفينة هسبانيولا ساعدني تريلاوني على وضع الطعام والمزيد من الأسلحة في القارب. ثم نادينا على كابتن سموليت، ريدروث وبحار جيد يدعى أبراهام جراي، وصعدوا إلى القارب معنا

Our journey back to the island was more difficult than the others. There were more people and supplies now, so the boat was heavy and very close to the water. We had to be very careful to prevent the boat from sinking. The wind blew from a different direction, too, and we were not moving towards the beach near the fort.

"We'll never get to the beach!" I said.

كانت رحلتنا إلى الجزيرة أكثر صعوبة من الآخرين. كان هناك المزيد من الناس والمؤن الآن ، لذلك كان القارب ثقيلًا وقريبًا جدًا من الماء. كان علينا أن نكون حذرين للغاية لمنع القارب من الغرق. هبت الرياح من اتجاه مختلف أيضًا ، ولم نتحرك نحو الشاطئ بالقرب من الحصن.

قلت: "لن نصل إلى الشاطئ أبدًا"!

"We must keep in this direction," said Captain Smollett. "Work hard, be patient, and we will arrive."

Then his voice changed. "The cannon!" he called.

I looked round and realised that the men we left on the Hispaniola were preparing a cannon. We were moving so slowly that we were not far from the ship. It would be easy for them to hit us.

قال كابتن سموليت: "يجب أن نستمر في هذا الاتجاه". "اعمل بجد وكن صبورًا وسنصل."

ثم تغير صوته. "المدفع"!

نظرت حولي وأدركت أن الرجال الذين تركناهم على هيسبانيولا كانوا يجهزون مدفعًا. كنا نتحرك ببطء شديد لدرجة أننا لم نكن بعيدين عن السفينة. سيكون من السهل عليهم ضربنا.

Trelawney stood up with a gun and fired at the pirates, and one of them fell. We heard a cry from the ship, and another from the beach. We saw that the other pirates were getting into their boats.

"Go as fast as you can," said Captain Smollet. "If we don't get to the beach, we're finished."

وقف تريلاوني ببندقية وأطلق النار على القراصنة ، وسقط أحدهم. سمعنا صرخة من السفينة وآخر من الشاطئ. رأينا أن القراصنة الآخرين كانوا يدخلون قواربهم.

قال كابتن سموليت "اذهب بأسرع ما يمكنك". "إذا لم نصل إلى الشاطئ ، فقد انتهي امرنا."

"They are only using one boat" I said. "The other men are walking to the beach to wait for us."
"It's a long way for them to run," said Captain Smollett. "It's a race to get there first."

قلت: "إنهم يستخدمون قاربًا واحدًا فقط". "الرجال الآخرون يمشون إلى الشاطئ لينتظرونا."

قال كابتن سموليت: "إنه طريق طويل عليهم ليجروه، إنه سباق للوصول إلى هناك أولاً".

We moved fast, and the wind was not so strong near the beach. However, Trelawney fired his gun again which made us all move to one side of the boat. It started to sink, but we were in just three feet of water. It was not difficult to walk to the beach, but we had lost many of our supplies in the water, including some of our guns.

تحركنا بسرعة ، ولم تكن الرياح قوية جدا بالقرب من الشاطئ. ومع ذلك ، أطلق تريلاوني سلاحه مرة أخرى مما جعلنا جميعًا نتحرك إلى جانب واحد من القارب. بدأت تغرق ، لكننا كنا على بعد ثلاثة أقدام فقط من الماء. لم يكن من الصعب السير إلى الشاطئ ، لكننا فقدنا الكثير من إمداداتنا في الماء ، بما في ذلك بعض أسلحتنا.

There were now voices in the trees and we knew that the pirates were near. We had to get to the fort before the pirates got to the beach. We all ran as fast as possible and at last we saw the fort in front of us. At the same time, seven pirates arrived at the other side of it. The pirates looked surprised to see the fort and stopped. This gave us time to fire our guns, and they quickly turned and ran into the trees behind them.

كانت هناك الآن أصوات خلف الأشجار وعرفنا أن القراصنة كانوا قريبين. كان علينا الوصول إلى الحصن قبل أن يصل القراصنة إلى الشاطئ. جرينا جميعًا بأسرع ما يمكننا، وفي النهاية رأينا الحصن أمامنا. في الوقت نفسه ، وصل سبعة قراصنة إلى الجانب الآخر منه. بدا القراصنة مندهشين لرؤية الحصن وتوقفوا. أعطانا هذا الوقت لإطلاق نيران أسلحتنا ، وسرعان ما استداروا وجروا نحو الأشجار وراءهم.

Before we could enter the fort, we heard another gun fire, and poor Redruth fell down. We quickly picked him up and took him into the fort, but it was too late: he was dead. Trelawney was very sad. Redruth had been a good servant to him. Captain Smollett put up a flag inside the fort and counted the supplies, then he asked me, "How long will we have to spend on this island?"

قبل أن نتمكن من دخول الحصن ، سمعنا إطلاق نار آخر ، وسقط ريد روث. سرعان ما رفعناه وأخذناه إلى الحصن ، ولكن بعد فوات الأوان: لقد مات. كان تريلاوني حزينًا جدًا. كان ريدروث خادما جيدا له. وضع الابتن سموليت علمًا داخل الحصن وقام بحساب الإمدادات ، ثم سألني: "كم من الوقت يجب أن نقضيه على هذه الجزيرة؟"

"In England, I told Blandly that if we were not back by August, to come and find us," I explained.
"We need the supplies that were lost in the sea," said Captain Smollett. "Without them, we have enough supplies until July only."

"في إنجلترا ، أخبرت بلاندلي أننا إذا لم نعد بحلول شهر أغسطس ، فليأتى الينا ويجدنا."

قال كابتن سموليت: "نحتاج إلى الإمدادات التي فقدت في البحر". "بدونهم ، لدينا إمدادات تكفى حتى شهر يوليو فقط."

At that moment, we heard gun fire and the fort was nearly hit.
"They can see the flag," said Trelawney. "We should take it down."
"No!" said Captain Smollett. "We keep the flag! It will show the pirates that we are not frightened of them!"

في تلك اللحظة ، سمعنا إطلاق نار وأصيب الحصن تقريبا.

قال تريلاوني: "يمكنهم رؤية العلم". "يجب أن ننزله."

"لا!" قال الكابتن سموليت. "نحافظ على العلم! هذا سوف يظهر للقراصنة أننا لسنا خائفين منهم" !

The gun fire continued, but it was almost impossible for them to hit anyone inside the fort. Just then, we heard someone calling.

"Doctor! Mr Trelawney! Captain! Are you there?"
I ran to the door of the fort and I found Jim Hawkins, safe and alive!

استمر إطلاق النار ، لكن كان من المستحيل عليهم ضرب أي شخص داخل الحصن. عندها فقط ، سمعنا شخصًا ينادي.
ايها ال"طبيب! مستر تريلاوني! كابتن! هل أنتم هناك؟"
جريت إلى باب الحصن ووجدت جيم هوكينز آمناً وحياً

Exercise on Chapter (6)

1-A………is a book in which you write down the things that happen to you daily.
(diary – dairy – cannon – fort)
2-To………means to shoot bullets or bombs.
(fire – shout – point – defend)
3-To…….means to arrive somewhere.
(sail – arrive to – get to – leave for)
4-A/An…………is an exciting experience in which dangerous or unusual things happen.
(adventure – advantage – contact – connect)
5-To…..is to communicate with someone or something.
(fire – burn – contact – supply)
6-To……is to protect someone or something from being attacked.
(fire – pick – sink – defend)
7-…..are food, clothes etc. that you need to take with you for a……..period of time.
(supplies – communications – Entries – Diaries)
8-A……..is a large gun with wheel.
(gun – cannon – sword – fort)
9-A……is a strong building or group of buildings used by soldiers or an army of defending an important place.
(diary – gun – contact – fort)
10-A/An………..is a good or useful feature that someone or something has.
(adventure – advantage – contact – connect)
11-You can't…….me from telling the truth. It is my right to defend myself.
(prevent – pick – put – get)
12-The soldiers used the ship's……….to frighten the pirates.
(cannon – sails – rows – cook)
13-We all must …….the interests of our country.
(attack – defend – hit – blow)
14-The airport lost……………..with the plane which disappeared from the radar.
(contact – arrival – race – diary)
15-It is not easy to break into this strong…………..
(entry – dairy – diary – fort)
16-He likes………….. That's why he is interested in travelling to remote areas.
(winds – races – fire – adventure)
17-The powerful engine gives this car an extra…………..
(supplies – adventure – advantage – dis advantage)

تم بحمد الله